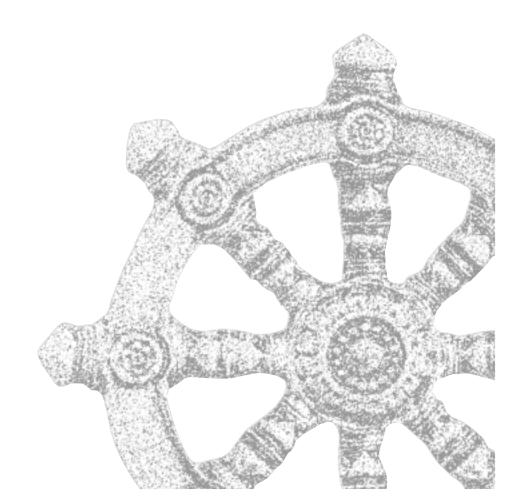


HOW KARMA WORKS

Level 1 of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma)



Thank you for your interest in the Asian Classics Institute's Correspondence Courses. A complete Formal Study Course consists of audio recordings from the original class series in New York, along with the supporting text materials from each class. The text and audio may be downloaded (see www.world-view.org in the on-line teachings section), or ordered by mail (see the Courses by mail section of the web site).

This Course consists of eleven classes, each of which has approximately two hours of audio, along with corresponding written materials. The audio can be ordered by mail, listened to online as streaming Real Audio, or downloaded onto your computer in mp3 or RA format for playback later. The written materials for this Course are contained in nine on-line files which can be downloaded, printed and assembled into a three-ring binder.

A complete Course binder contains the following sections in this order: a binder cover and spine, an overview of the teacher training program, prayers, a course syllabus, readings, class notes, homework, quizzes, a final examination, answer keys and Tibetan study materials. (The class notes were taken by a student in the original live classes, and you'll need these for reference as what's written on the board isn't always spoken.) For ease of binder assembly, be sure to print the files on three hole paper.

Each class lecture has a corresponding homework, quiz, meditation, and class notes. Most classes have readings, although not every class does. After listening to the audio from a class, the homework, quiz and meditation should be completed for that class before continuing on to the next class. The homework can be completed using your class notes, open book style. The quizzes should be completed from memory only, without the aid of notes or other materials. (A good approach is to look at an answer key *after* you have finished that homework, and to use that answer key to study for that quiz.) A final exam is given at the end of the Course.

You may grade your own papers using the supplied answer keys or, if you wish to do so, you may mail your quizzes, homework and final examination to the Asian Classics Institute to be graded. All of the quiz and final exam questions come from the homework, so the homework answer keys are also used to grade the quizzes and the final exam.

If you use the answer keys to complete your homework or quizzes by copying, please do not mail your papers to the Institute for grading. If you do mail your papers in, upon successfully passing, you will be presented with a certificate of proficiency from the Institute.

If you choose to have your papers graded by the Institute (this is completely optional), please mail all of the homework, quizzes and the final for the Course together – *DO NOT* mail papers from individual classes, or a partially completed Course. Once you have completed the entire Course, mail it to: The Asian Classics Institute, Correspondence Courses, 7055 Juniper Drive, Colorado Springs, CO 80908. Please make a copy of all materials that you send to us, in case they are lost in the mail. **Be sure to provide a self-addressed, stamped envelope of appropriate size and postage to have your papers returned.**

We would like to emphasize finally that, although recordings and written materials can be extremely helpful, it is essential for serious Buddhist practitioners to meet and study directly with a qualified Teacher who can give the necessary guidance and personal instructions of the lineage.

The wisdom of Enlightened Beings has been passed down in an unbroken lineage in these teachings. May you put them into practice in your life, gain every realization, and benefit all. May every goodness grow and spread in all directions right now!

Overview of the Formal Study Course Teacher Training Program

The Six Great Books of Buddhism outlined below are the subject of a geshe's eighteen year program of monastic study. The Asian Classics Institute condenses these Six Great Books of Buddhism into a series of 15 Formal Study Courses.

Book One

Geshe Study Subject: The Perfection of Wisdom (Prajnya Paramita)

School of Buddhism Studied: Beginning Middle-Way (Madhyamika Svatrantika);

also includes some material from Mind-Only (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Text: The Jewel of Realization (Abhisamaya Alamkara)

Written by: Maitreya (the Future Buddha) as related to Master Asanga, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Six years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course II: Buddhist Refuge

Course XV: What the Buddha Really Meant

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, Overview of the Art of Interpretation, Overview of the Twenty Practitioners, Overview of Dependent Origination, Overview of the Form and Formless

Written by: Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Gyalwang Trinley Namgyal (fl. 1850) Typical Subjects: The three kinds of refuge; The wish for enlightenment; What is nirvana?; The proofs for emptiness; Who is Maitreya?; The twelve links of dependent origination in the Wheel of Life; Deep levels of meditation; How do we know when the Buddha was speaking figuratively?; A flow-chart for liberation.

Book Two

Geshe Study Subject: The Middle Way (Madhyamika)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika); also includes some material from the Mind-Only School (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Texts: Entering the Middle Way (Madhyamaka Avatara) and A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattva Charya Avatara)

Written by: The first by Master Chandrakirti, circa 650 AD in explanation of Master Nagarjuna, about 200 AD; and the second by Master Shantideva, circa 700 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Four years in a Tibetan monastery **Summarized in ACI Courses:**

Course VI: The Diamond-Cutter Sutra

Course VII: The Vows of the Bodhisattva

Courses X, XI, XII: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Overview of the Middle Way; A Commentary on the Diamond-Cutter Sutra; The String of Shining Jewels, on the Three Sets of Vows; The Point of Entry for Bodhisattvas, a Commentary to the "Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life"

Written by: Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748); Geshe Tsewang Samdrup (c. 1830)

Typical Subjects: Emptiness and the Wish for enlightenment; Emptiness and the bodies of a Buddha; The future of the Buddha's teaching; Emptiness and karma; The direct perception of emptiness; Emptiness and paradise; How empty things still work; The root and secondary vows of a bodhisattva; How to keep the vows; How to purify bad deeds; Taking joy; How to fight mental afflictions; The perfection of giving; How anger destroys good karma; The nature of anger; Where bad things really come from; Dealing with jealousy; Quietude; Stopping attachment; On the joys of solitude; Devoting oneself to meditation; On the need to see emptiness; The two realities; The emptiness of feelings; The sliver of Diamond.

Book Three

Geshe Study Subject: Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: The Treasure House of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma Kosha)

Written by: Master Vasubandhu, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course V: How Karma Works

Course VIII: Death and the Realms of Existence

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: *Light on the Path to Freedom, a Commentary to the Treasure House*

Written by: Gyalwa Gendun Drup, the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474)

Typical Subjects: The nature of karma; The role of motivation; The correlation of deeds and their results; How karma is carried; The relative severity of deeds; The three realms of existence; The nature of the *bardo* (intermediate state between birth and death); A description of time and space; The destruction of the world; How to do death meditation

Book Four

Geshe Study Subject: Vowed Morality (Vinaya) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: A Summary of Vowed Morality (Vinaya Sutra)

Written by: Master Gunaprabha, circa 500 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Overview of the ACI Teacher Training Program

Summarized in ACI Course:

Course IX: The Ethical Life

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Course: *Essence of the Ocean of Discipline; Daymaker--A commentary on the "Essence of the Ocean"*

Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851) Typical Subjects: The nature of the vows of freedom; Their divisions; The specific vows (note: nuns and monks' vows are presented only to those with ordination); Who can take vows; How vows are lost; The benefits of keeping vows.

Book Five

Geshe Study Subject: Buddhist Logic (Pramana) School of Buddhism Studied: Sutrist (Sautrantika)

Main Root Text: The Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika)

Written by: Master Dharmakirti, circa 650 AD, on Master Dignaga, circa 450 AD Traditional period to cover this subject: Three months per year for 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course IV: The Proof of Future Lives Course XIII: The Art of Reasoning

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: The Four Reasonings; Light on the Path to Freedom, An Explanation of the "Commentary on Valid Perception"; Jewel of the True Thought; An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning; An Explanation of the Path of Reasoning; The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son; The Collected Topics of Rato; A Clear Exposition upon Mind and Mental Functions

Written by: Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); The First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyaltsen (1567?-1662); Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk (1928-1997); Master Tutor Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901); Master Ngawang Trashi (c. 1700); Master Chok-hla U-ser (c. 1500)

Typical Subjects: The meaning of valid perception; The nature of omniscience; Proofs for past and future lives; The qualities of a Buddha; Why study the art of reasoning?; The definition of a reason; How to do Buddhist debate; The parts of a logical statement; Cause and effect; The nature of the subject mind; The concept of negatives and positives; The nature of definitions; The concept of time.

Book Six

Geshe Study Subject: The Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika)

Main Root Text: The Great Book on the Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim Chenmo)

Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419)

Traditional period to cover this subject: Intermittently over a period of 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Overview of the ACI Teacher Training Program

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course I: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism

Course III: Applied Meditation

Course XIV: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart

- **Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses:** A Gift of Liberation, Thrust into Our Hands; The Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Commentary on the Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss (Ganden Hlagyama); Preparing for Tantra (The "Source of All My Good" and its Commentary); A Collection of Lojong Texts; Offering of the Mandala; How to Offer the Mandala in Thirty-Seven Parts
- **Written by:** Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941); Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851)
- **Typical Subjects:** The Meaning of Rennciation, the Wish for enlightenment, and correct world view; How to do a daily practice; How to meditate; What to meditate on; How to practice at work and other everyday situations; How to offer the mandala; How to practice love and compassion; Brief presentations of the entire path to Enlightenment; How to prepare for the secret teachings.

भ्या | भ्या | mandel

เลาสุดิร์สังเฏิงเกูสุจเจ็รเลิร์สุเลภุม sashi pukyi jukshing metok tram,

|२.४८.श्री८.पि.भे.श्रीश्वाचित्रंत्रंत्रंत्रंत्रंत्रंत्रंत्रं

| अरशः कुशः हिरः रु: रुझेम्। अरशः रुपः, sangye shingdu mikte ulwar gyi,

|त्र्ज्ञेंगुर्द्रस्य द्या हिट त्य र्श्वेद प्रमः र्व्जा । | drokun namdak shingla chupar shok.

ाक्षे दे त्यु दु र इ अड़ य मै के हु ह प्य की ।

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

Offering the Mandala

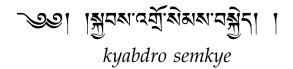
Here is the great Earth, Filled with the smell of incense, Covered with a blanket of flowers,

The Great Mountain, The Four Continents, Wearing a jewel Of the Sun, and Moon.

In my mind I make them The Paradise of a Buddha, And offer it all to You.

By this deed May every living being Experience The Pure World.

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.



|প্রধ্যক্রিপ্রভূপ,২৮.পুর্যাপ,শ্রী,পপুর্যা,রপ্রপারো

sangye chudang tsokyi choknam la,

|चु८:कुव:वर:रु:वर्गाःदे:श्रुवशःशुःअकेश|

jangchub bardu dakni kyabsu chi,

| บารุการกุลาลักลาสฏิลานวิ เฉลัราสุมลาฏิลา dakki jinsok gyipay sunam kyi,

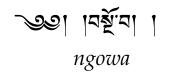
| तर्ज्ञाः ताः प्रवाद्याः अद्याद्याः प्रवाद्याः प्रवाद्याः विवाद्याः विवाद्याः विवाद्याः विवाद्याः विवाद्याः व

Refuge and The Wish

I go for refuge To the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha Until I achieve enlightenment.

By the power Of the goodness that I do In giving and the rest,

May I reach Buddhahood For the sake Of every living being.



| इस्में प्रति प्

เปล่า เลี้ยง เล้ยง เลี้ยง เล้ยง เล

รunam yeshe lejung way,

| द्रमः सः भुः निष्ठेशः वर्षेनः धरः विन्। । । dampa kunyi topar shok.

Dedication of the Goodness of a Deed

By the goodness Of what I have just done May all beings

Complete the collection Of merit and wisdom,

And thus gain the two Ultimate bodies That merit and wisdom make.

ञ्जा ।सर्केर्:या । chupa

| क्रेंब:य:ब्र:ब्रेट:बरब:क्रुब:रेब:येंके|

tonpa lame sanggye rinpoche,

ब्रिंच यः त्वः येऽ : ५ यः कें यः रे दः यें के ।

kyoppa lame damchu rinpoche,

विदेशमास्यासेनान्यो वित्तर्भने संस्कृ

drenpa lame gendun rinpoche,

।श्चित्रशः वाद्यशः नृग्वितः सक्त्याः वासुसः तः सक्ति ।

kyabne konchok sumla chupa bul.

A Buddhist Grace

I offer this To the Teacher Higher than any other, The precious Buddha.

I offer this To the protection Higher than any other, The precious Dharma.

I offer this
To the guides
Higher than any other,
The precious Sangha.

I offer this
To the places of refuge,
To the Three Jewels,
Rare and supreme.



The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Level One of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma)

Course Syllabus

Reading One

Subject: Introduction to Abhidharma (Higher Knowledge) and the Detailist

School; history and structure of The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha) and its commentaries

Reading: Master Vasubandhu (350 AD), The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha), folio 1B

His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Gyalwa Gendun Drup (1391-1474), *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*, folios 2B-3A, 6B-10B, 13A-

13B

Master Changkya Rolpay Dorje (1717-1786), The Schools of

Philosophy, folios 12B-13A

Reading Two

Subject: The nature of karma, and what it produces; the Detailist concept

of "non-communicating form"

Reading: Master Vasubandhu, The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha), folios 2A, 10B

His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Illumination of the Path to

Freedom, folios 17B-18B, 108A-108B

Reading Three

Subject: Types of deeds, and the nature of motivation

Reading: Master Vasubandhu, The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha), folios 11A, 13A-B

His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Illumination of the Path to

Freedom, folios 111A-112B, 127A-127B

Course V: How Karma Works Course Syllabus

Reading Four

Subject: The correlation of deeds and their results

Reading: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), The Great Book on the Steps of the Path

(Lamrim Chenmo), folios 118B-120A

Master Vasubandhu, The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha), folio 12B

His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Illumination of the Path to

Freedom, folios 122B-125A

Reading Five

Subject: How karma is carried, according to the Mind-Only School

Reading: Je Tsongkapa, *Illumination of the True Thought*, folios 75B-76A, 125B-

127A, 147B-148B, 174A-174B

Reading Six

Subject: How emptiness allows karma to work, according to the Middle-

Way School

Reading: Master Chandrakirti (650 AD), Entering the Middle Way

(Madhyamakavatara), folio 271B

Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), Overview of the Middle Way,

folios 25B, 38A, 125A-130A

Reading Seven

Subject: Black and white deeds, the "path of action," and the root and

branch non-virtues

Reading: Master Vasubandhu, The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha), folios 13A-13B

His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Illumination of the Path to

Freedom, folios 126A-127A, 128A-130A

Course V: How Karma Works Course Syllabus

Reading Eight

Subject: The concept of most basic virtue, and the distinction between

projecting energy and finishing energy

Reading: Master Vasubandhu, The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha), folios 14A-14B

His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Illumination of the Path to

Freedom, folios 130A-130B, 134A-135B

Reading Nine

Subject: The five immediate misdeeds, and the concept of a schism

Reading: Master Vasubandhu, The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha), folio 14B

His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Illumination of the Path to

Freedom, folios 136A-139B

Reading Ten

Subject: The relative severity of deeds, and what causes it

Reading: Master Vasubandhu, The Treasure House of Knowledge

(Abhidharmakosha), folio 15A

His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Illumination of the Path to

Freedom, folios 142B-145B

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading One: Introduction to Abhidharma

The first selection is from the *Schools of Philosophy*, written by Changkya Rolpay Dorje (1717-1786).

ततु.ताथा । यत्तर्त्रातु, क्षेर् झूँच तात् । विश्वानशिष्यः श्र्रा । विश्वानशिष्यः श्र्रा । विश्वानशिष्यः । त्रिर तर्रु र स्थ्वान्यः विश्वान्यः । विश्वान्यः विश्वान्य

Here next are the Buddhist schools. They are the Detailists, the Sutrists, the Mind-Only School, and those of the Middle Way. The number of these schools is exactly four, no more or less, and this is proven by numerous statements from both the secret and the open scriptures. In particular, in proof of this number there is the following quotation from the *Commentary by Diamond Heart:*

Those of the Buddha are four; the Able One Had no intention of a fifth.

Master Aryadeva has said as well:

Those who assert that the teachings of the Buddha Consist of four schools have seen the way it is: These, for those who hope to practice, are precisely The paths explained by the Detailists and the rest.

On the question of an evolution of these four schools, some people assert that the Detailist and Sutrist Schools started after the third council for assembling the scriptures. They say that the Middle-Way School began during the days of Master Nagarjuna, and that the Mind-Only started in the time of Arya Asanga. They also believe that, prior to these points in time, there was no concept of the four schools.

This idea is however incorrect, for we do see the concept of the four schools in works such as *Ocean of the Angels*; the *Secret Teaching of Lo Diamond, in Two Parts*; the *Secret Teaching of the Wheel of Time*; the *Secret Teaching of Diamond Arali*; and others as well.

७७। ह्यें प्र'र्दे प्र'र्दे प्राचित्र' प्रोचे अप पर्दे अया पर्दे के या अर्दे द 'पा अर्दे र 'पा या

The verses throughout the commentary below are from the *Treasure House of Knowledge*, written by the Master Vasubandhu (350 AD).

্রভাষ্মতান্যন্ত্র ব্রান্তর্যার স্থান ক্রিম করে মের্ছির নিশা প্রমানার করে। বুকা

The commentary to this and the verses below is from *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*, written by Gyalwa Gendun Drup, His Holiness the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474).

Now the *Treasure House of Knowledge* utilizes eight chapters as a means of expressing its subject matter of five basic types. Our explanation of the work has four divisions: an explanation of its title, the translator's obeisance, an explanation of the body of the text, and an explanation of the conclusion. In explaining the title we will first translate it, then elucidate its meaning.

2 About the Title

२ व्यामा स्थान क्षा स्थान स्य

In Sanskrit, the Abhidharmakosha Karika.
In Tibetan, the Chu Ngunpay Dzu Kyi Tsikleur Jepa.
[In English, The Treasure House of Knowledge, set in verse.]

यात्रा निष्पराखान्त्री क्ष्यायात्री क्षयायात्री क्ष्यायात्री क्ष्यायात्री क्ष्यायात्री क्ष्यायात्री क्षयात्री क्ष्यायात्री क्षयायात्री कष्यायात्री कष्यात्री कष्यायात्री कष्यायात्री

In Sanskrit, the title of this work is the Abhidharmakosha Karika. In Tibetan, this translates as Chu Ngunpay Dzu Kyi Tsikleur Jepa [or, in English, The Treasure House of Knowledge, set in verse.] Abhidharma refers to "knowledge," kosha to "treasure house," and karika to "set in verse."

यात्रकार्र्स् यात्र प्राप्त प्राप्त क्षा क्षा यात्र प्राप्त प्र प्र प्राप्त प्र प

Now why do we bother mentioning the Sanskrit title of this commentary to the Buddha's words? We want to indicate that the work is of reputable origin. Buddhas of all three times, whether past or present or future, attain their enlightenment at the Seat of the Diamond, in India. So the Indian name is meant to show an origin in the seat of knowledge, India.

A commentary is worth no more or less than it is, but if people think it comes from India they'll take the time to study and teach it, just because of the better source. It's just like the local merchants. If they hear some barley has come from the lowlands, right away they want to trade for it, because the source is a good one.

लट्टर मुं श्रुमा द्राम् सं वाश्वमायते द्रमाणे प्राप्त स्थान । स्याश्वमायते । स्याश्यमायते । स्याश्यमायते । स्याश्यमायते । स्याश्वमायते । स्याश्यमायते । स्याश्यमायते । स्याश्यमायते । स्याश्यमायते

A commentary may actually be excellent, but if you don't put some Sanskrit in it nobody wants to work with it. They think it's just Tibetan. Like local merchants who heard that some barley came from a highlands nook—nobody wants to touch it, whether it's really good or bad.

दश्यत्त्यत्ता यत् श्रुप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व यश्या द्राष्ट्रायदेश्व्यायायदेश्यायश्यात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व यश्या द्राष्ट्रायदेश्व्यायायदेश्यायश्यात्वा व्याप्तात्वा व्याप्ता व्याप्ता व्यापत्या व्याप्ता व्याप्ता व्याप्ता व्याप्

Mentioning the title in Sanskrit has the further purpose of starting a mental propensity for this excellent tongue. All Buddhas of the three times teach the Dharma in Sanskrit after their enlightenment. An acquaintance with just this small amount of the language acts as a mental seed, which will ripen into a nearly automatic fluency. Finally, it helps one comprehend the differences in word order between Tibetan and Sanskrit.

यायह्यायवे के न स्थेन हों । सर्यन हेंन न हेंन न हेंन न होंने स्थान स्था

Why do we mention the title at the very start? It facilitates locating the proper volume, and understanding its subject at a glance. Why put the Sanskrit and Tibetan side by side? So we may recall the kindness of the master translators, and strive to repay our debt to them.

We'll explain the actual import of the title later on; here first comes the obeisance of the translator.

देश.तर.योखयो.तो योषेश.योट.पे.याह्रेंट.यी.योट.क्र्रेंप.यक्षेप्.तर्या ।रट.त्.यु। ।रट.त्.ज.योश्रेशा योषेश.यथिट.ग्री.पेश.तर.योखयो.ता यथिट.त्.ट्रेंप.ययो.ययो.ययोज.

We now turn to the second part of our detailed treatment of the text's subject matter: an explication of caused phenomena. In this regard we examine the actual content of the text only after discussing its structure in three divisions: a listing of the eight chapters, a demonstration of their interrelation, and a description of the subject matter presented in each of the eight.

योशन्तुं त्रश्रा व्यवस्य विद्यान्त्र विद्य विद्यान्त्र विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्र विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्य विद्य विद्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्

Master Purnavardhana presents the eight chapters of the *Treasure House* as follows:

Eight chapters were written to elucidate in detail what is indicated only briefly by the opening words of the texts: "All phenomena, stained or without stain." the first two of the chapters are devoted to a general treatment of stained and unstained phenomena.

A detailed presentation of stained phenomena is left to the next three chapters. The third, for example, relates (1) who it is that is so very afflicted, (2) where they live so very afflicted, and (3) how they are so very afflicted. It does so with respective presentations on (1) the five types of beings in the three realms—the world of living beings; (2) the external world—the "vessel" which holds these beings, and (3) the four modes of birth and twelve links of dependent origination. The fourth and fifth chapters describe what it is that makes beings so very afflicted—stained deeds and the mental afflictions.

चन्तर्रे लिखातकर्री।

चन्तर्रे लिखातकर्री।

चन्तर्रे लिखातकर्री।

चन्तर्रे लिखातकर्री।

चन्तर्रे लिखातकर्री।

चन्तर्रे लिखातकर्री।

चन्तर्रे लिखातकर्रे स्वरं स्व

The final three chapters give a detailed treatment of unstained phenomena. Chapter Six covers *who* it is, what kind of person, that is purified; *where* it is, the place, that he is purified; and *how* it is, by what stages of realization, that he is purified. Chapter Seven concerns *what* it is that makes the person pure: as sutra says, "Affliction is something wisdom must destroy." Chapter Eight concerns meditation—that which provides a base for wisdom to rely on—for as sutra states again, "The mind in meditation gleans pure reality."

द्वीः अः योद्धेशः यद्धेतः प्रिं विश्वः यक्ष्यः प्रे विश्वः यद्धेतः यद

Other masters of the past have outlined the eight in the following way:

The work is presented in eight chapters in order to address three points: objects, activity, and result. In general, all *objects* may be divided into two types: apparent reality and actual reality. The first two chapters are devoted to apparent reality; the third, fourth, and fifth deal with actual reality—the four truths. The sixth chapter explains the different types of realization, whose sphere of *activity* is actual reality. The *result* which is attained, wisdom, as well as other personal attributes associated with it are treated in the final two chapters.

याचान्त्रभान्त्राच्यान्यभान्त्रभान्त्राच्यान्यभान्त्रभान्त्यभान्त्रभान्

As for the interrelation of these chapters, the first presents the general subject matter addressed by the works on knowledge: stained and unstained phenomena. The first chapter makes but a mere mention of the powers and of the way in which caused phenomena arise; thus the following chapter, the second, is devoted to a more detailed treatment of these two points. The subject of the three realms, given only passing mention in these opening chapters, is therefore explored in the third. Some believe that the three realms thus presented are creations of some god, such as the one they call "Powerful"; the following, fourth chapter therefore disproves this idea and shows that the real source is deeds.

यात्रकार्क्तित्तर्दा सम्बन्धित्तर्वे सम्बन्धित्तर्वे त्यात्रात्त्रम् विकार्यस्व स्वतः स्वत

ह्र अ.ज.योथ्य.यथ्येचे.त.यक्षेथ.स्। इस.ज.योथ्य.यथ्य.यथ्य.यक्षेय.त.ज्य.य्थेय.स्य.य्थेय.य्येय.य्येय.य्थेय.य्येय.य्येय.य्येय.य्येय.य्येय.य्येय.य्येय.य्येय.य्ये

The message of the next chapter, the fifth, is that the motivating force behind the deeds outlined in Chapter Four is the widespread mental afflictions. The sixth chapter is devoted to demonstrating a path by which we may eliminate these afflictions, so naturally comes after their presentation. The seventh chapter provides additional detail about the types of knowledge mentioned in the sixth; the eighth, lastly, completes the interrelationship of the chapters by enlarging upon the qualities which the Buddha possesses in common with advanced beings at lower stages—these qualities and those unique to the Buddha having first appeared in Chapter Seven.

|गशुअ:य:वै:गलुर:वी:क्रॅग:र्न्व:यश:वेश:वर:वर्णुर:र्न्।

The third point we have promised, a description of the subject matter presented in each of the eight chapters, will be understood from the words of the Master's work itself.

यवर्याः श्रीं यः श्रीं यः श्रीं यः यवर्याः यवर्याः यवर्याः यवर्याः यवर्याः यवर्याः यवर्याः यवर्याः यविर्याः यविष्यः यविष्यः यविर्याः यविष्यः यवि

Having thus covered the pledge to compose the work with its preliminary eulogy, we shall present the actual explanation of the work's title, the first subject treated once the author has inspired himself for the work. The word "knowledge" will be explained first, both by itself and, incidentally, with regard to its accessories. Then we will speak of the expression "treasure house."

5
Knowledge and its Real Accessories

किंशासर्द्र विशासना दें सेन हेशावन्तर परशा

Knowledge is unstained wisdom, and its accessories.

[I.5]

यद्यान्यात्रे क्रियास्य वर्षे त्याम्ब्रियास्य वर्ष्या स्वर्णः विष्यास्य वर्षेयाः वर्षेयः वर्ये वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्ये वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्ये वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्ये वर्य

Master Vasubandhu has promised "To write this commentary, the *Treasure House of Knowledge.*" But what does he mean by "knowledge"? There are two types of such knowledge; we may describe the first in the form of a logical statement:

यालेबन्ते। द्वेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्र्येयात्राम्बुक्षाय्य्यः विकारवाद्वेत्राक्षेत्र

Consider the following three paths without stain: those of seeing, habituation, and no further learning.

They are actual knowledge, because

They constitute unstained wisdom and its accessories.

यान्त्रिश्वायायान्त्रेश र्वे प्रति । त्रि प्रति । प्र

Now the second portion of knowledge, its accessories, may further be addressed in two divisions of real accessories to knowledge and merely nominal accessories to knowledge. Real accessories to knowledge may be considered in terms of the level upon which they rely, the meaning of reliance in the present context, and an investigation into how many heaps knowledge has, if you also count all which stand in attendance to it.

On what levels do the three mentioned paths rely? The path of seeing may rely on any of the six levels of concentration. This is because the final stage of the path of preparation, known as "ultimate phenomenon," may itself rely upon any of these six levels; and the path of seeing always relies upon the same level as the stage of the ultimate phenomenon. As the scripture states, "Same level as ultimate phenomenon." Scripture also confirms our assertion that the ultimate-phenomenon stage can rely on any of the six levels:

Meditative at beyond no leisure, Extraordinary concentration level too.

रे.छेर.पर्ज्ञ्याश्चर्यात्वर्याः विद्वर्याः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्याः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्याः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्याः विद्वर्यः विद्वयः विद्वर्यः विद्वर्यः विद्वयः विद्वयः विद्वयः विद्वयः विद्वयः विद्वयः विद्वयः विद्वयः विद्वयः विद

The ultimate-phenomenon stage of the path of preparation does not, however, rely on preliminary levels other than the one mentioned. The stage beyond no leisure is free of stain, whereas the remaining stages are stained—they are levels wherein one's state of realization derives only from making distinctions between more or less subtle levels of experience. Nor can the ultimate stage of the path of preparation ever rely on the desire level, for the stage is one of controlled meditation, and the desire level is not.

वर् विषासी मार्याययी भी रा

Neither can the ultimate stage rely upon any one of the first three formless levels, for at these levels one is incapable of focusing upon the desire level—and during the path of seeing one must. Finally, it is impossible for the ultimate stage to rely on the "peak" level—the fourth of the formless levels—for one's ability to discriminate at this level is too unclear.

The unstained path of habituation, as well as that of no further learning, may both rely on any one of the nine unstained levels.

Now what we mean by "reliance" in the above discussion is not the kind of reliance you might imagine, where the pole of a banner is propped up in one of those chimney-like tubes in the corner of the roof to a Tibetan house. Rather the path, or mental realization, actually consists of the particular level it relies upon.

How many heaps does knowledge have, if you count all of those which are attendant to it? Knowledge can be said to have all five heaps, since unstained wisdom comes along with non-communicating form included within unstained restraint. Feeling is present as pleasure of thought if the wisdom relies on the

first two concentration levels. Where it relies on the third, mental pleasure is had. Reliance on other levels, of neutral feeling, means that neutral feeling is present. Discrimination is there as an attendant to consciousness of one's thoughts, as well as the heap of other factors—be they mental functions or the factors not associated with mind—along with consciousness.

Someone may object that it is improper to speak of consciousness of one's thoughts as being "attendant" to unstained wisdom, since mind itself must be considered more primary than mental functions. Generally the relationship is so, but in the context of an ultimate analysis of phenomena wisdom must be treated as the more primary. If the context had been the subject of belief, for example, we could even have considered faith more principal.

|ग्राञ्चग्रारासेद्रात्र'म्राञ्चग्राराणुःह्रारायद्यद्रस्यार्युद्रस्यायद्वद्रस्यात्र्वा

With regard to the formless realm, no accessory to knowledge possessing form would be present, and thus only four of the heaps had in attendance.

6
Nominal Accessories to Knowledge

१२.ब्रॅच.चि.ब्रीर.चार.२८.चब्रुब.चर्ड्रश.चार.।

Those used to achieve it, and the commentaries.

[I.6]

ત્રાયા ત્રાયા

र्शेवाश्यायाचे वहरावहवाश्याय दे के शासदे दाया धीत हैं।

There are a number of accessories to knowledge which are merely nominal. Those include first the wisdoms of learning, contemplation, and meditation, which are practiced in order "to achieve it"—actual knowledge. Second there is that amount of wisdom with which one is born. Finally there are the classical commentaries which take these very types of wisdom as their subject matter. These include *The Practice of Wisdom* and similar works.

वैटा टु.जम.श्रूम.वैटा टु.जम.चवा.मुट.ग्री.ज्या.या.श्रुम.वरु.हुम। क्रीम.वर्गीम.क्ष्य.यु.श्रुम.मह्य.त्रा.तुम.मव.या.यम्प्रेम.यमा ह्या.वैटा टु.जम.यमम. ट्री विट.ट्र्य.यम.पट.क्र्य.मह्य.तह्य.तह्य.तह्य.यम.मम.क्री.ज्या.तह.हीम। टु.जम.यमम. ट्रि.च्या.ह्या.ह्या.ह्या.क्ष्य.मह्य.तह्य.तह.स्य.मह्य.तह.स्या.ह्या.

Let us use the form of a logical statement:

Consider the accessories to knowledge just mentioned.

They may be given the name "knowledge," because

They constitute the means or cause of one's achieving actual knowledge.

यम्याक्षात्तात्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्

What is the actual process of causation here? Untainted wisdom springs from meditative wisdom, which comes from contemplative wisdom, which derives from the wisdom of learning—all dependent upon the wisdom with which one was born.

Calling these accessories "knowledge" serves a specific purpose: the author is trying to tell us that they must be relied upon as methods, or causes, for achieving real knowledge. In actual point of fact they could never *be* knowledge, since they are stained.

स्त्रियाश्वेष्ठास्त्राचारायास्त्रास्त्राचारायास्त्राचार्यः श्चिष्ठाः विष्ठाः स्वास्त्राचार्यः स्त्रियाच्याः विष्ठाः स्वास्त्राच्याः विष्ठाः स्वास्त्राचार्यः स्त्रियाच्याः विष्ठाः स्वास्त्राचार्यः स्त्रियाच्याः स्त्रियाचः स्त्रियाच्याः स्त्रियाच्याः स्त्रियाच्याः स्त्रियाच्याः स्त्रियाच्याः स्त्रियाच्याः स्त्रियाच्याः स्त्रियाचः स्त्रियः स्त

At what level can each of the three accessories mentioned be found? The wisdom with which one is born exists in all three realms.

स्रिन्दिन्द्रीम्।
स्रिम्द्रिम्।
स्रिम्द्रिम्।
स्रिम्द्रि

Wisdom derived from learning is found in the lower two realms but never in the formless, since there is no hearing sound in that realm. Contemplative wisdom exists in the desire but not in the higher two realms, since there the mere act of starting to turn the mind towards an object sets off one-pointed concentration. Meditative wisdom, on the other hand, appears only in these higher realms and never in the desire, since it is not a level where there exists any controlled meditation.

र्ह्न्या विश्वान्त्र्यास्य स्वर्ध्यान्य स्वर्ध्यान्य स्वर्ध्यान्य स्वर्ध्यान्य स्वर्ध्य स्वर्य स्वर्ध्य स्वर्ध्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्ध्य स्वर्ध्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्ध्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्ध्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वयः

The classical commentaries, if we consider them as the actual sound of speech, exist only in the desire realm and are absent from the higher two: as the *Treasure House* itself reads, "Communicating at those with examining." If on the other hand we consider these commentaries as names, words, and letters, they can be said to exist in the lower two realms but not in the formless: again the *Treasure House* states, "Included in the desire, form; animate."

Meditative wisdom of the form realm, insofar as it possesses the noncommunicating form of restraint arising from concentration, involves all five heaps.

। इत्रेस्ट्रिम् क्र्र्स्यास्त्रं पाल्यायाः लेखा म्यास्त्रं प्रमुप्तास्त्रं स्त्रं स्त्र

Where does the word "knowledge" [Sanskrit: *abhidharma*] come from? A phenomenon [*dharma*] is that which possesses [*dhṛ*] a nature. And knowledge brings to [*abhi*] you, or leads you to [*abhi*] that highest of all existing phenomena: nirvana.

About the Expression "Treasure House"

१०१२:२:२ॅव:८:८८:५ग:८८:धैर:२८। १०९:धे:वादरा:२:धेद:यश:र्केश:सर्देद:सर्हि।

"Treasure house" of knowledge because they all fit here In its points, or since they are its home.

[I.7-8]

निश्च प्रस्ति प्रति प्र

रुप्दिर्भवे मान्यारे पार्वे र मुः अर्दिर छेया पर्दे र पाप्ति व रेष

Master Vasubandhu has stated: "I shall write this commentary, *The Treasure House of Knowledge*." Just how is it a **treasure house of knowledge**? The very most prized points of the Seven Works on Knowledge **all fit here in the points**, in the subject matter, of the Master's commentary. The scabbard in which you sheathe a sword, for example, is called the "scabbard of the sword," and the place where you deposit your riches is termed the "treasure house of riches."

नेत्यः स्वानीतः विषयः क्षेयः प्रहेन्यः प्रकेषः प्रहेन्। नियः स्वानीः प्रवानीः प्रवा

You could also say that the Seven works on Knowledge are themselves the "treasure house," and that they are the home, or source, for the present work. The expression "scabbard of the sword," for example, can just as well indicate the place from where the sword was drawn.

|गशुर्यायाद्वीर्यायार्श्वेत्रादुः दर्वो प्रयार्श्वेत्राययात्रासुद्यायर सुवायात्री

Next comes a demonstration that the teachings on knowledge are the word of the Teacher, preceded by a statement of purpose.

8
Purpose and a Proof

विकास्ययार्यात् स्यावित्यित्याः हित्ये स्यास्य विकास्य विकास्य विकास्य विकास्य विकास्य विकास्य विकास्य विकास विका

There's no way to put the mental afflictions to rest without an Ultimate analysis of every existing phenomenon, and this

Affliction is what keeps the world adrift here in the ocean of Life. Thus the Teacher has spoken it, they say.

[I.9-12]

स्थान्य स्थान

Giving an explanation of knowledge has the following purpose. Without wisdom which analyzes every phenomenon in an ultimate way, there is no way of putting to rest all that the mental afflictions imply. And this affliction is what keeps those of the world adrift here in the ocean of life. It is therefore necessary to plant, in students' minds, wisdom which can make this ultimate analysis of phenomena. Thus the explanation.

क्र्यार्यात्रे क्र्यायप्तिराणीः वेषारयायक्षीरायात्रा वर्षे क्र्याय्यात्रे क्रियायाय्ये क्रियायाय्ये क्रियायाय्ये क्रियाय्ये क्रिये क्रिये

The Master, moreover, has good reason to honor the exposition of knowledge. He knows that, first, it plants the wisdom of ultimate analysis in the minds of students. Secondly, it has been **spoken by the Teacher.**

"Why do you say that the exposition of knowledge is spoken by the Teacher?" one may object. "Are you trying to say that the Seven Works on Knowledge were not composed by the enemy destroyers?" In answer, we may say that

they are the speech of the Teacher. Even the great enemy destroyers would have been unable to make the first descriptions of the nature and then divisions of existing phenomena had they not relied upon the Buddha.

क्ष्र-देश्व-त्रम्याद्यान्यस्य त्रियान्यस्य त्रियस्य त्रियान्यस्य त्रियस्य त्रियस्य त्रियस्य त्रियस्य त्रियस्य त्रस्य त्रियस्य त्यस्य त्रियस्य त्रियस्य त्रियस्य त्यस्य त्रियस्य त्यस्य त्यस्य त्यस्य त्यस्य त्

The Buddha first delivered various teachings, according to the states of mind or inquiries of his disciples. The scattered records of these teachings were later taken by the Venerable Katyayaniputra and others, and collected into such works as *The Practice of Wisdom*. The Venerable Dharmatrata, for example, has taken a whole group of scattered sutras, delivered at various places and times, addressing the needs of various students with counsel such as "Alas! All things with causes must change!" He has arranged these various teachings into a group, but they remain the word of the Teacher. So too with the Seven.

The entire point may be summarized in an extended logical statement:

The works on knowledge are nothing less than the word of the Teacher, because

The enemy destroyers have only made them into collections,

Analogous to the sections of sutra and vowed morality found in the canon, for They are only collections made by the Arya Kashyapa.

Thus they say.

प्राचिश्वासास्य प्राची स्ट्रिं पार्ट्ट प्राचिश्वास हो। सर्चे हो प्राचिश्वास प्राचीश्वास हो। दे प्राची प्राचिश्वास हो। दे प्राची प्राचिश्वास हो। दे प्राची प्राचिश्वास हो। दे प्राची प्राची प्राची प्राची प्राची प्राची हो। दे प्राची प्र

This expression, "Thus they say," is meant to indicate that another school of philosophers holds a different view. The so-called "Sutrists" assert the following:

That these explanations constitute the speech of the Teacher is a belief held by the followers of the "Knowledge" group within the Detailist school of philosophy. We however cannot accept this tenet, for many statements appear in these texts which are contrary to logic. One example is the claim that phenomena not produced by causes exist as material entities. Moreover, everybody knows there are lots of other authors who have composed such works on knowledge. They are the works of enemy destroyers, not collections of the Buddha's speech.

Now Master Jinaputra's text, in a versed summary, lists the Seven Works on Knowledge as follows:

Katyayaniputra did *Practice of Wisdom,* The *Treatise* was of Vasumitra.

Collection of Consciousness, Devasharma, And Shariputra the Heap of Phenomena. The Comment on Wisdom's by Maudgalyayana, Mahakaushtila's Types of Beings; And Purna, Category Anthology.

च्याः श्रुप्तर्था वर्षे प्रति । वर्षे प्रति । अर्रे क्ष्यं प्रति । वर्षे प्रति । वर्ष

Master Purnavardhana attributes the Types of Beings to Shariputra.

"Why is the one school," you may ask, "known as the `Sutrists.'?" This school of philosophers holds that sutra is valid, but denies the validity of classical commentaries such as the Seven Works on Knowledge. The Detailists respond with the following criticism:

ततुःकुंकुंद्रःशुःकूट्यदुःकुर्वे वेशक्षुंत्रःय। यश्चित्रःयवियाःमुःश्चेद्रःयदुःकुर्वेदःयश्चेश्चेद्रःयविष्ठःयदेश्चेद्रेदः द्रःवःश्चेद्रःश्चेद्रःश्चेद्रःयद्वेद्रःयद्वेशःकुर्वेदः

Well then, what about the expression "monk who has mastered all three sections of the scriptures," which occurs in sutra itself? How are you going to come up with three sections of scripture? We don't see any section on knowledge apart from these very works.

सर्रे श्रेपाद रो

म्बित्रक्षेत्

The Sutrists counter:

This is not a problem. Those works within the sutra section devoted to the delineation of what is ultimately real and to the defining characteristics of phenomena constitute in themselves a discrete section on knowledge.

So they say.

"Now why is the other school," one might continue, "known as the `Detailists'?" One may say that they are "Detailists" because they devote their study exclusively to the classical commentary known as *Detailed Exposition*, or else because they understand the *Exposition's* meaning. The school itself may be further divided into a number of groups. Those who reside in Kashmir are known as the "Kashmiris," while those who live in the western part of the same land are known as the "Westerners." Detailists in areas other than Kashmir, those in central India and so forth, are referred to collectively as those "Under the Sun."

क्रेन्यान्त्रं श्रीम।

वर्ष्यान्त्रं श्रीम।

Now the lines beginning with "There's no way to put the mental afflictions to rest..." also indicate that Master Vasubandhu's commentary possesses the four requisite attributes of a reputable work. Again we may use the form of a logical statement:

Consider the act of making a statement of purpose, and of a relation of the text to that purpose, here at the beginning of the commentary.

It has a purpose of its own, because

It conveys to disciples the fact that the commentary possesses the four attributes of a reputable work. Once they realize that these attributes are present, disciples will be inspired to study the text.

यवीयात्तर्। नित्त्व क्ष्मा म्यान्त्र्यं नित्त्व क्ष्मा म्यान्त्र्यं नित्त्र क्ष्मा म्यान्त्र्यं नित्त्व क्ष्मा म्यान्त्र्यं निव्यत्य क्ष्मा न

Here are the four attributes:

- 1) The *subject matter* of the text concerns stained and unstained types of phenomena. It is indicated in the verse with the words "every existing phenomenon."
- 2) The *purpose* is to utilize this subject matter to plant, in students' minds, that wisdom which analyzes phenomena in an ultimate way. It is indicated by the words "ultimate analysis."

- The *ultimate goal* is to have these students achieve nirvana, both with and without anything remaining. It is indicated indirectly by the entire phrase running from "There's no way..." up to "...without," and on from "this affliction..." up to the word "Thus."
- 4) A *relation* exists in that the purpose must be achieved through the subject matter of the work, and the ultimate goal through this very purpose.

One may also state the relation as being between the subject matter of the work (that is, all existing phenomena) and the means by which this subject matter is expressed (i.e., the commentary itself).

निर्वाकार्याचर्ज्ञ्च्याप्यते स्त्रीकार्याक्ष्याच्या क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क

Demonstrating that the work possesses the four attributes serves its own purpose. Master Dharmottara explains that

It functions to satisfy any doubts that a student might have about whether the commentary has any purpose; if so, whether one could ever achieve that purpose; if so, whether anyone would want to; and, if so, whether there exists any relationship between the text and the realization of its proclaimed purpose.

Master Vinitadeva is in no disagreement:

A statement of just these four attributes serves to allay any suspicions a person might have that the work might lack any subject matter, or be without a purpose, or lead to no desirable ultimate goal, or that these three might bear no relation to each other. The statement thus inspires students to take up the commentary.

१विंदः दे।

त्र्युराया ने स्वराय देन स्वासान स्वा

Someone may make the following objection:

If the mere claims that the work possesses these attributes is enough to remove any doubts that it does not, then the simple statement "Sound is a changing thing" should be enough to remove any misconception that sound is lasting. If the latter is true, it must be an exercise in futility for the classic proofs to go on and give a reason followed by a supporting example, to prove the point of sound's impermanence.

देव हे भे श्रेश श्रिय देवें श्राय श्रें व प्रदेश हो ने प्रतिश्वा की स्थाप के स्थाप से स्था से स्थाप स

And suppose the statement about sound is *not* enough to stop the misconception by itself. How then can the assertion about the attributes suffice to end a student's doubts? For the two cases are exactly the same.

र्झ्न रामा वे स्था निर्मा क्या मार्च निर्मा क्या निर्मा क्या मार्च निर्मा क्या निर्मा क्य

वयायायासेरारें बिकासायकायारयायकरारें।

Sages reply to such an objection as follows:

Telling someone that sound is changing is enough to prevent his believing that sound is something lasting. Giving him then a reason and supporting example serves to plant the opposing, accurate belief in his mind, removing the uncertainty and lack of correct ideas left behind by stopping his wrong belief.

विर्म्म प्रति स्थित के स्थित के स्थित के स्थित स्थित

One may ask if any of the four attributes is such that one subsumes another. The purpose, its ultimate purpose, and the relationship of the content to the purpose are, all of them, subsumed by the subject matter—for this subject matter includes every existing phenomenon. Neither of the purpose of its ultimate purpose subsumes the other, since they are cause and effect.

Yet another question may be raised:

You've mentioned that the ultimate goal of knowledge is achieving the two types of nirvana. Can you list each one's basic nature, as well as characteristic features?"

तयुःश्र्र्भ्राच्नेत्राक्षात्र्य्या यश्राक्ष्याच्चेत्राच्युत्राच्याः स्वाच्याः स्वाच्याः स्वाच्याः स्वाच्याः स्व

According to the Listener system, nirvana where something still remains is described as having both achieved and actualized a cessation resulting from analysis, an elimination of the true condition of the source of all suffering, which implies deeds and mental afflictions. At the same time, one has achieved but not actualized a cessation where he has eliminated suffering. Something "remains" because one still undergoes some one or more of the three types of suffering.

यर्ज्ञान्यः चरुष्यः प्रश्नात्रः अर्त्त्वा स्वात्त्रः स्वात्तः स्वात्तः स्वात्तः स्वात्तः स्वात्तः स्वात्तः स्व च्याः स्वात्रः स्वात्तः स्वात्त्रः स्वात्तः स्वातः स्वात्तः स्वातः स

We can see occurrences in sutra of persons who had attained this nirvana, who were living in desire-realm bodies and still had to go through outright suffering. Arya Gurchung, for example, was forced to consume a soup of water and ashes, which killed him. The Arya Udayin was decapitated in a brothel. We hear of a self-made Buddha who died from a wound inflicted by a poisoned arrow. Even the Buddha himself was pricked by the sandalwood thorn, suffered from backache, and bled where he was hit from the fragments of shells hurled by Devadatta's catapult.

Enemy destroyers reside in all three realms; those at the first three levels of concentration have but the last two kinds of suffering left: the first is completely absent there. Those at the fourth concentration level and beyond have only the last suffering, the pervasive kind of mortality itself, remaining still.

ह्येर. विश्वासार्थयाचीरामा विदेश्वरावदेश्चे श्रेचाम्बर्धासाह्या विश्वासार्थराविश्वासार्थरात्रे विश्वासार्थरात्रे विश्वासार्थे विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वासार्थे विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास

Given the above, we can say that one achieves nirvana without anything left over when he actually brings about a cessation in which every one of the stained heaps has been stopped. The *Anthology of Advices* concurs:

The body dissolves, feeling's finally cooled, End of discrimination, demise of the other Factors—consciousness fades away. Such one has seen the end of suffering.

कुर्मा भी त्या क्षेत्र । क्षेत्र क्षे

It should be noted that the above view is only that of the present school. According to the great vehicle, the freedom achieved by listeners and self-made victors is not a final sort of freedom. Moreover, the prick of His foot by the sandalwood thorn and the other events mentioned above were only a show

that the Buddha put on for the sake of His disciples. Actually the Buddha is completely incapable of suffering, for He has liberated himself from every possible problem, ranging from those of a normal suffering life up to those of a lower nirvana. The sutra known as *Developing the Three Bodies of a Buddha* does though speak of the two form bodies of the Buddha as being nirvana with something remaining, and of the phenomena body as being a nirvana with nothing remaining.

त्रश्चीयः प्रत्यास्त्र स्त्रीयः स्त्री

Master Jinaputra summarizes as follows:

The whole purpose of explicating knowledge is to make one a master of subjects such as the heaps and so on. Two benefits spring from such mastery. One's own focus helps him to develop such qualities as mental quietude. And when discoursing with others, he will feel full confidence to expound on any question.

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Two: The Nature of Karma, and What it Produces; the Detailist Concept of "Non-Communicating Form"

र्ट्याचन्द्रा । प्राचित्राचन्द्रा । प्राचित्राचन्द्रचन्द्राचन्द्रचन्द्राचन्द्रचन्द्राचन्द्रचन्द्

We turn now to our commentary on the "Presentation of Deeds," which constitutes the fourth chapter of the *Treasure House of Knowledge*. First we relate the present chapter to the one just finished, and then continue with the exposition of deeds itself.

1 What Causes Worlds (এম'এম'রইবাম'রীমা

Deeds cause the multitude of worlds.

[IX.1]

स्वारं वाया स्वाया स्वया स्वया स्वया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वया स्वया

One may begin with the following question: "You have just described a multitude of worlds—both the great vessels of the outer worlds and the living beings they contain. Where do they all come from?" They do not come from no cause at all, and they do not come from causes that are inconsistent with their own nature. This is because they stay for some time, then go away; and as the root text said itself, "Not an almighty one or the like, because of stages and such."

व्ययादात्यका श्रीकाली वाका वाका श्रीदान व्यत्र मुन्ति विद्या हे वा स्वर् स्वार्क्ष माना स्वर् के विद्या के वा

What then *does* cause them? It is the past **deeds** of living beings that **cause** all **the multitude of worlds**—both the places and the people.

स्या वस्त्रा वतर्त्रा यहार्त्ता अर्र्या अर्र्या व्याप्ति । प्रत्या वस्त्रा वस्त्र वस्त्रा वस्त्रा वस्त्रा वस्त्रा वस्त्रा वस्त्रा वस्त्रा वस्त्र वस्त

The exposition that follows now on deeds is divided into two parts: first on the basic nature of deeds, and secondly on listings from sutra on the different types of deeds. The former is itself presented first in a brief introduction and then in a more detailed treatment.

2
Introduction to Deeds

१२.४.४४४४.८.२८.२४.२४। १४४४.८.४८.५० १८४.८.४८.५४.२८.८४.५१ १८.८४.४४.४८.४५.४५.४१ १८.८४.४४.४५.४५.४४.४४।

They're movement of the mind and what it brings. Mental movement is a deed of thought; What it causes, deeds of body and speech. These are either communicating or not.

[IV.2-5]

"In the line above," one might continue, "you said that `deeds cause the multitude of worlds.' Just how many types of deeds are there?" They—deeds—are of two different types: deeds consisting of movement of the mind, and the deeds that it brings—those that the mind motivates.

One may ask about each of their basic natures. **Mental movement is a deed of the thought,** for it consists of a deed linked with consciousness of the thought. **What it causes**—that is, deeds motivated by the mind—are of two kinds: these are **deeds of** the **body and** deeds of **speech. These** two themselves can be further divided into two types each: they **are either** what we call **"communicating" or not.**

र्मान्त्रेयाया यथाग्रीत्रत्वे। यथाम्बुयाश्चेते क्रिंग्यो हिन्यम् इयायम्। विक्रियायाया यथाग्रीत्रत्वे। यथाम्बुयाश्चेते क्रिंग्यो हिन्यम्। इयायम्।

Our more detailed treatment of these points continues in three steps: the definition of a deed, typical features of the three types of deeds in general, and different divisions of non-communicating types of deeds.

युर्भागीः इस्रायर रेवान्ते ५५८। इस्रायर रेवान्ते ५४४ वर्षे । ५८ वे वा

In discussing the definition of a deed we will cover first the communicating, and then the non-communicating types. The former will be described first for those of the body, and then for those of speech.

3
Communicating Deeds of the Body

<u>| तुबः इसःरेगः वेतः रवेतवः सुः वर्रेत्।</u>

Body communicating held to be shape.

[IV.6]

"You mentioned," one might start, "a line just now saying `these are either communicating or not.' Can you describe the types of bodily deeds that are said to be `communicating'?" **Communicating** deeds of the **body** are **held** in the present school **to be** the **shape** that the physical body takes under motivation by movements of the mind present for the duration of specific actions such as prostrating oneself before a holy object or taking the life of a sentient being.

22
Non-Communicating Form

Even during distraction, while mind is stopped, Virtue or not, continuing after, Taking the great elements as its causes, This form we say does not communicate.

[I.41-4]

विश्वायत्तरम् इस्रायर रेवा चेत्रास्य स्थायेत्य स्थाये वा स्थायेत्य स्यायेत्य स्यायेत्य स्थायेत्य स्थायेत्य स्थायेत्य स्थायेत्

Someone may begin:

What about the line above that ends with the words "...and non-communicating"? What do you mean by "non-communicating form"?

र्रा श्रेमश्रम् स्वर्धः स्वरं स

This form which **does not communicate** possesses five distinctive features. The first is a feature of period: this type of form is present **even during** periods when one is **distracted**, or **while** one is engaged in a controlled meditation where **mind is stopped**.

This much is also true of the eye and so on, so that we must mention a feature of essence: this form is either **virtuous or not**. The description so far could apply to communicating form as well, so a feature of time is included: non-communicating form **continues** on **after** a deed, in a perfect stream. As much could also be said of virtuous and non-virtuous holds, and thus we note that this form **takes the great elements as its causes**.

विश्वासक्तर्भित्रप्रमा विश्वासक्तर्भित्रप्रमान्त्री विश्वासक्तर्भित्रप्रमान्त्रभ्यास्त्रप्रमान्त्रप्रम

The Kashmiri Sanghabhadra [?] attacks this definition with the following verse:

It's incomplete, contradicts classical Commentary, one then is not, One not then is. "Even's" superfluous, A feature not mentioned should be. यश्चेत्रायर्श्यायश्च्याध्यात्राय्या स्थाय्त्रायाः व्याप्ताः व्यापतः व्याप्ताः व्यापतः व

He explains his criticism as follows:

Let's consider some non-communicating form at the first instant of its existence. According to you, it could never be non-communicating form, because it is *incomplete*—it lacks the feature of continuing on in a perfect stream. Consider this form again. According to you, it could also never be a substantial thing, because it's a stream. And if you go ahead and agree that it is not substantial, you *contradict* the *classical commentaries* which explain that it is.

स्त्राच्या स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्

Consider further the non-communicating form that is created by single-pointed concentration. If your definition is correct, *then it is not* non-communicating form. This is because it does not exist during particular periods when one is distracted, or while mind is stopped; rather, it is present during periods when one is not distracted, and when the mind is functioning.

२८. पश्चात्तर, योष्ट्रा स्थात्तर, योच्चात्र, याच्चात्र, योच्चात्र, योच्चात्र

Take too what is *not* this kind of form at all: form which does communicate intent. If you are right *then* it *is* form which doesn't communicate intent, because it is present during periods without distraction, and with a functioning mind. Moreover, the word "even" is superfluous: when you state that this type of form is there when the mind is distracted, everyone understands that it is also present at times when the mind is functioning. You have, finally, also made the mistake of *not mentioning a feature* which *should* have been: the fact that this type of form is invisible and ineffable.

द्रीयाचीर-भूष-पह्नी । शुरानेद्राम्भूष-भूचायान्य स्थान्य स्थान

Sanghabhadra [?] then presents an alternative definition, in the following verse of his own:

Form different from the one You made: during thought and also Not, specified, ineffable, This does "not communicate."

य्त्र्यम्भःश्री यर्त्र्यः नेत्रः नेत्रः नेत्रः म्याः नेत्रः म्याः नित्रः म्याः म्

Both of the above systems, nonetheless, amount to the same inconsistency. If you establish something as non-communicating form because it relates to periods when the mind is not distracted, or functioning, then form which does

communicate intent must also not communicate it. And if on the other hand you establish something as non-communicating because it relates to periods where the mind is stopped, then the two restraints which arise from single-pointed concentration could never be non-communicating.

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Three: Types of Deeds, and the Nature of Motivation

69
Abbreviated List of Rights and Wrongs

|देःत्यश्चः तेंद्रः त्रश्चश्चशः द्वशः दे| |द्रयोः द्रदः श्चेः द्वोः श्वेः देयावाः प्रमा |त्यवः ग्रीःत्यशः द्वेः त्रश्चुद्रः यासुद्रवः वें।

A very gross abbreviation of them All was stated as the ten paths of Action, whether virtuous or not.

[IV.262-4]

|योगभःश्वुर:८८:केशःश्वुर:२:यशःके:वेंद्र:पठुर:वाशुरशःश्वे। दवो:व:८८:शेः

A very gross abbreviation of all of them—of all right and wrong activities—was stated as the ten paths of action, whether we are talking about the ten virtuous types or the ten types which are not virtuous.

One may ask just what is not included in such an abbreviation. Certain steps of a particular act, say that of taking life, are not included. These would be the steps known as "undertaking" or "conclusion." Neither have we included any but the most serious forms of action in speech; mental movement as an element in deeds of the thought has been omitted too.

र्या.य.जन्न.यी.स्र्री. महिया.रटा ट्या.यी.क्षेत्र.तर.स्र.य.के.ये.रटा ल्रट.ग्री.

As for virtues, the above abbreviation again leaves out the "undertaking" and "conclusion" steps for actions of the body. Examples of virtue in one's speech, such as speaking sweetly, are omitted—as is mental movement in deeds of the thought.

| प्राप्तिकारायात्त्रत्व | क्षेत्राचित्त्रत्य | यक्षाय्यक्षः चित्रत्व | प्राप्तिकारायात्र्व | प्राप्तिकारायात्र | प्राप्तिकार | प्राप्तिकारायात्र | प्राप्तिकारायात्र | प्राप्तिकार | प्राप्तिकारायात्र | प्राप्तिकार | प

Our more detailed treatment of what we call a "path of action" includes seven different parts:

- 1) the relative certainty of whether a given action includes types of form that either do or do not communicate one's intentions;
- 2) the division of each of the paths of action into three different types;
- 3) the details of non-virtuous paths of action;
- 4) the ways in which one loses, and then regains, his most basic virtues;
- 5) how many paths of action can occur together with movement of the mind;
- 6) what paths of action are found in which realms, and among what types of beings; and
- 7) the results of the paths of action.

11 Virtue and the Other Types

… おエ・な !

|त्यायतः र्नेष-५-५वो स्वा |दे-कं-वियाधंन-प्रत्याकेन-ग्रीका |दे-कं-वियाधंन-प्रका-क्रिन-ग्रीका |दे-प्रया-द-व्यक्त-क्रक्-का-व्यक्त

...Freedom

Is the ultimate virtue. The roots as well as Shame and a conscience are so in themselves. Those that are linked with them, by a mental link; Actions and the like, by motivation. Their opposites, non-virtue. The ultimate In the ethically neutral, those described.

[IV.30b-6]

मान्दर्भित्री न्वीत्वर्धान्यर्भवाक्षरम्यात्रुक्ष्मित्वर्धन्यदः स्वीत्वर्धान्यस्य विष्ठाः । प्रत्यान्यस्य विष्ठा

One may ask whether virtue and the rest are established only on the basis of the motivation involved. They are not; in fact, there are four different divisions, beginning with what we call "ultimate" virtue. How do we describe them?

चर्याः वर्षः स्वत् । द्राः पदिः द्वेतः द्वाः प्राः पदिः हो । सुवाः प्रस्यः स्वतः स्वतः प्रदेशः द्वाः पदिः द्वेतः विश्वः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः स्वतः प्रदेशः स्वतः प्रदेशः प

यस्ति। याल्यायाः हेर्यायमः यन्याः केन्योशान्योशान्याये स्वीमा नयेमः या

First consider **freedom**—nirvana. It **is the ultimate virtue**, for it is the highest state of happiness, free of every single suffering. It's like a totally healthy person. Next consider **the** three **roots** of virtue, **as well as** a sense of **shame and a conscience**. They are virtue by nature, for they are virtue **in** and of **themselves**, without relying on anything else. They are like medicinal herbs.

दी तस्रिन्यते स्रुद्धान्य स्य

Still further let us take **those** instances of mind and mental functions **that** are joined in a mental **link with them**—with these virtues. They are **"mental-link"** virtue, for we establish them as virtue **by** the fact that they share **a mental link** with virtue. They are, for example, like the liquid in which you mix your medicinal herbs.

देर्न्यायीश्राणुद्राद्वश्च प्रदेश्य प्रदेश्य प्रदेश्य प्रदेश्य प्रदेश प

Next consider physical and verbal **actions and the like**—the things that are motivated by the mental elements just described. They are what we call "motivational" virtue, for they are considered virtue **by** reason of the virtuous **motivation** involved with them. We can compare them to the milk that a mother produces after she has drunk the liquid mixed with the medicinal herbs described.

The opposites of each of the above are what we call "non-virtue"; the process is as follows. First take the cycle of life. It is the ultimate non-virtue, for it is the highest form of unhappiness—total bondage in suffering. It is like an illness.

भ्रीति प्रति स्वाप्ति स्वापति स्वाप्ति स्वापति स्

Next consider the three root non-virtues, as well as shamelessness and the lack of a conscience. They are non-virtue by nature, for they are non-virtue in and of themselves, without relying on anything else. They are like poisonous herbs.

श्रे.पर्स्र्रान्यते श्रेष्ठ्रम् विक्षा अर्थ्य स्थान्य स्थान्य

Then consider instances of mind and mental functions which share a mental link with these non-virtues. They are "mental-link" non-virtue, for we establish them as non-virtue because they share a mental link with non-virtue. These we can compare to a liquid in which the poisonous herbs were mixed.

इ.र्या.यांश्राये वेश्वर्यं र्या. त्या. त्

Let's next take the deeds of body and speech motivated by the mental elements described. These are "motivational" non-virtue, for we establish them as non-virtue through the non-virtuous motivation involved. These types resemble the milk that a mother gives after she has drunk the liquid mixed with the poisonous herbs.

र्रिन-त्रायमः खुट-तुः स्वसूत्रायात्री सूमः वसूत्रायते स्वां स्वां

वर्म्यान्यन्ता वर्ष्यात्राचित्रामीत्रेत्राच्यान्यन्त्रान्यान्यन्त्रा

The ultimate in the things which are ethically neutral consist of those instances we have described previously: non-analytic cessations and unproduced space.

We turn next to a description of motivation.

12 The Nature of Motivation

१ मुद्देश्य स्थानिक स

Two types of motivation: causal and
The one we give the name of "at the time."
The first of the two acts to set you off;
The second's function is to make you continue.
The consciousness eliminated by seeing
Is the one which starts. The thought for both
Eliminated by habituation.
The five function in continuation.

[IV.37-44]

अर्बर-झर-वीश-इस-पर-रेवा-चेर-गुद-दश-झेर-पर-से-तुश-दा सर्र-पशा वेवा

यदीदायर प्रविदाय स्थापा स्

One may begin as follows:

You have stated above that the communicating type of form can never be motivated by something which is eliminated by the path of seeing. Sutra though explains that mistaken views lead to mistaken thoughts, mistaken speech, and mistaken activity. Isn't there a contradiction here?

There is not. In general, all motivation may be divided into two types: the motivation had during the causal stages of a deed and the one we give the name of "motivation at the time." The first of the two acts to set you off: this is where you say before any particular action, "I'm going to do this or that." The second's function is to make you continue on: this is where you say to yourself after you've already started, "Now I'll do this act."

Now among these two, the consciousness eliminated by the path of seeing is the first, the one which starts you off on an action. This is the one that the sutra was referring to; when we made our statement, we were talking about how it couldn't be the motivation during the time of the action.

र्यटः वेश्वः श्वः त्रेः त्रुः यह्वा चेट्रायं त्रः योत्रः त्रेषः योत्रः व्याः योत्रः योत्रः योत्रः योत्रः योत्र रयटः वेश्वः श्वः त्रेः हेशः शुः यह्वा चेट्रायं त्रः योत्रः त्रेषः योत्रः योत्रः योत्रः योत्रः योत्रः योत्रः यो

धेत पर्व सुरा मह्युक्ष पर्वे

The thought for both kinds of motivation includes types that are **eliminated by** the path of **habituation**, for it involves conceptions and is directed outwards. **The five** sense consciousnesses **function** only **in continuation** of a deed, for they are types of awareness that do not involve conception but which are directed outwards.

We continue now with certain relevant features of motivation.

13 Certain Features of Motivation

| इस:श्रुक:वाक्षः श्रुक:वाक्षेत्रः वाक्षेत्रः वाकष्टे वाक्षेत्रः वाक्षेत्रः वाक्षेत्रः वाक्षेत्रः वाकष्टे वाकष्ट

From starting types of virtue and the rest, Come three types of continuation as well. For the Able the same, or that one virtue. Those that come from ripening are neither.

[IV.45-8]

रवाः त्रिः वह्नवाः वीदः द्वाः वाः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्

One may ask whether it is assured that starting types of motivation that are virtuous or whatever will lead to continuing types of motivation that are also virtuous or such. From each of the starting types, from those of virtue and the rest, come all three types of continuation as well—whether it be virtue, non-virtue, or the ethically neutral.

तह्याचित्रस्य प्रत्ये स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

For the Able Ones they are the same: starting types of motivation which have a virtuous nature lead to continuing types that are also virtue, and starting motivations of an ethically neutral character lead to continuing motivations that are neutral too. Or their starting motivations that are ethically neutral can lead to continuing motivations that are virtue. With the Able Ones though you can never have a continuing motivation which is ethically neutral coming from a starting motivation of virtue, for these beings' motivation never digresses.

स्त्री विश्वाम्बर्धर्थाः श्रेम्।

स्त्री विश्वाम्बर्धर्थाः श्रेम्।

प्रित्तामः क्षेत्राम् स्वतः स्वतः

Some people make the following claim:

The Able Ones are never in any state of mind other than that of balanced meditation. They therefore possess no ethically neutral states of mind. For support we have the verse from sutra that says,

Even as he goes, the elephant meditates. Even as he rises, the elephant meditates. Even as he sleeps, the elephant meditates. Even as he stays, the elephant meditates.

रे'याचु न्न्या श्चा न्या ने म्या मुंचा माने या स्था निष्या निष्य

यिवियाश्वास्तर तर् विश्वास स्त्र्याश्वास त्यान्ये हिर विश्वा चेरा

In reply to this assertion the Detailists make a claim of their own:

This is no proof that they can never have any state of mind that is not one of balanced meditation. The quotation is only referring to the way the Ones Thus Gone think as they act in any of the four different ways: when they are going somewhere, they conceive of themselves as going somewhere, and so on.

यश्चित्र, तेश्वत्तर, यी. यहंशा क्ष्यत्त, यी. व्यत्त, व्यत्त

Those things that come about from a ripening of past deeds are neither the starting type of motivation or the continuing type. This is because their appearance does not rely on any particular application of effort—they just come out on their own.

This completes our discussion of the typical features of the three types of deeds in general. We move on now to the different divisions of non-communicating types of deeds, beginning with a brief summary and continuing to a more detailed treatment.

As for the first, non-communicating form can be understood as having three different types. These are vows, anti-vows, and those other than these two.

याल्य प्रश्नेत्र प्राप्त के स्वार्धेत् प्राप्त के स्वार्धेत के स्वा

The *Treasure House of Chim* [Chim Jampey Yang's commentary to the *Abhidharmakosha*] states:

Sutra describes three kinds of karma: virtuous karma, non-virtuous karma, and neutral karma. Virtue is that karma which, in the short term, brings you a karmic ripening which is desirable (that is, a feeling of pleasure), and ultimately protects you from suffering (that is, helps you achieve nirvana). Non-virtue is that karma which brings you a karmic ripening which is undesirable (that is, a feeling of pain). A neutral deed, something neither virtuous nor non-virtuous, is that karma which brings you something which is neither desirable nor undesirable.

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Four: The Correlation of Deeds and Their Results

संचार्यम् र्वीयायाक्षेत्राचीकायर्क्षेत्रकायर्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्णः स्वर्णः यास्त्राय्याः स्वर्णः स्वरं स्वर्णः स्वरं स्वर्णः स्वरं स्वर्णः स्वरं स्वर्णः स्वरं स्

The first selection is taken from the *Treasure House of Knowledge* (*Abhidharmakosha*), written by Master Vasubandhu (350 AD), and from its commentary by His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Gendun Drup (1391-1474), entitled *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*.

Definitions of the Basic Types of Deeds

|त्यक्षःचर्ने क्षेःचर्ने दरःयाल्वकःकै। |द्रयो:दरःक्षेःद्रयो:दरःयाल्वकःध्येक्।

Deeds for the pleasant, unpleasant, and other-Virtuous, non-virtuous, and other.

[IV.177-8]

त्यक्षः येतुः क्ष्म्ं वक्षः देये। यात्रक्ष्म् याद्वाः व्यक्षः याद्वाः व्यक्षः योत् विष्णः वि

"Just how," one may ask, "do you describe virtuous, non-virtuous, and ethically neutral **deeds**?" Deeds that lead to a **pleasant** experience are **virtuous** deeds. Those that lead to an **unpleasant** experience, an experience of suffering, are **non-virtuous**. Deeds that lead to some "other" type of experience—that is, which bring on a neutral experience—are themselves the "other" type of deeds: those which are ethically neutral.

Our second group includes divisions of deeds according to their results; we begin with a brief introduction and continue to a more detailed treatment.

49
Deeds According to Result

|यर्-वार्श्वेदःवर्श्व्यः वार्श्वेयः वार्श्वेयः वार्श्वेयः वार्श्वेयः वार्श्वेयः वार्श्वेयः वार्श्वेयः वार्श्वेय

Merit, non-merit, those which are unshifting; The three including those which lead to pleasure.

[IV.179-80]

विरासित्री त्यसारे त्यामश्चर्या वर्श्वर वर्षण्य वर्श्वर वर्षण्य वर्य वर्षण्य वर्षण्य वर्षण्य वर्षण्य

Now deeds may be divided into three different types: deeds which represent merit, non-merit, or those which are unshifting. They can also be divided into a different set of three: the three including those which lead to an experience of pleasure and so on.

Our more detailed treatment of these points will proceed in two steps: first a presentation of merit and the rest; secondly, a description of the mentioned pleasure and so on.

50
Merit, Non-Merit, and Unshifting Deeds

|यश्रद्भश्रः श्रुवः स्तुरः श्रेः वाधितः स्तुरः । |यारः स्तुरः श्रः त्रेः देः दवाः तृ। |यारः सुरः श्रः त्रेः देः दवाः तृ। |यारः सुरः श्रः त्रेः देः दवाः तृ।

Merit, virtuous deeds of the realm of desire. The ones that come from the above, unshifting. They're unshifting for the reason that The deeds involved ripen at their levels.

[IV.181-4]

य विषय अप्राण्डियाय स्त्राण्डियाय स्त्राण्ड

One might start with the following question: "Just how do you describe merit and the other types of deeds you mentioned?" Deeds that we call "merit" are the virtuous deeds of the realm of desire. What we call "unshifting" deeds are the ones that come from those realms above; that is, from the form and formless realms.

"Isn't it contradictory," one may object, "for you to describe deeds of the upper realms as unshifting, when those of the third and lower levels of concentration are explained as shifting types?" There is no contradiction. The levels of concentration from the third on down are explained as "shifting" or "affected"

only with reference to their being affected by the various problems that prevent one from perfecting single-pointed concentration. The point in calling deeds of the upper realms "unshifting" is in reference, rather, to the fact that they do not shift direction when they ripen.

इसःश्चेत्रः याल्यः प्राध्ये प

These deeds are called "unshifting" for the reason that a ripening of deeds which is meant to occur at "their" level—at the levels of the form and formless realms—will never occur at any other level. The point is thus that the ripening is an **unshifting** one.

यःश्रंश्रायायश्चात्र्याक्षः वार्ष्यायाय्यात्रः व्यात्रः व्यात्यः व्यात्रः व्यात्यः व्यात्यः

Deeds of the desire realm, on the other hand, are shifting—someone meant to be born as a pleasure being can, through the effect of certain factors, take birth as one of the other types of beings. There was for example the case of the Brahmin who because of his generosity was to be born as a pleasure being. But he caught sight of an especially majestic elephant and thought to himself how wonderful it would be if he could obtain one. As a result, he took birth as the elephant known as Son of the Protector.

यावयः तीयाश्चा । यह स्त्री । यह स्त्री । यह स्त्रीयाश्चा । यह स्त्रीयाश्ची । यह स्त

Next we consider deeds involving a sensation of pleasure and so on. We proceed in three steps concerning (1) definitive examples of each of the deeds leading to specific types of experiences, (2) the various divisions of experience,

and (3) the correlation between specific sensations and the deeds they result from. Definitive examples are discussed in terms of both positions accepted by the present school and those accepted by others.

51
Accepted Views on Deeds
Leading to Specific Experiences

|सूयाः त्रस्यः स्थितः वर्षः वर्ष |सूयाः स्रोदः वर्षः स्रोदः वर्षः वर्षः

Virtue up to the third concentration, the ones that Bring a pleasant experience. From here on up, The ones which bring on neither pain nor pleasure. Non-virtue here which bring a painful experience.

[IV.185-8]

यदे.यःश्चिरः त्यीरः ताःश्चिश्वां विश्वायविरः त्यः त्यीरः यदे त्यः विश्वायविरः विरः त्यीरः यदे त्यः विश्वायविरः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविरः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विष्वयः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविषः विश्वायविष्यः विश्वायविष्यः विश्वायविष्यः विश्वायविष्यः विश्वायविष्यः विश्वायविष्यः विश्वायविष्यः विष्यः विश्वायः विष्यः विश्वायः विश्वायः विष्यः विश्वायः विश्वायः विष्यः विष्यः विश्वायः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः व

"In the lines above," one might begin, "you mentioned `the three including those which lead to pleasure.' Can you describe these types of deeds?" Virtuous deeds from the desire realm up to the third concentration level are the ones that bring one a pleasant experience in the future. From here—that is, from this third concentration level—on up to the "peak" level, virtuous deeds are the ones which bring on an experience of a neutral nature: neither pain nor pleasure. The deeds which bring on a painful experience are all the non-virtuous deeds here in the desire realm.

52
Other Views on Deeds that Lead
to Specific Experiences

वित्राक्षरः वरः अः धिरः रें लिखा । व्यव्याः चेरः हेः यादः योः श्वेरः । । वर्ष्यः याह्रकः श्विरः प्रयः इसः श्वेकः प्रथा । श्वः श्वेः स्रोरः याश्वरः श्वेकः वर्षेरः श्वेरः।

Some make the claim that the ones below as well Have the one between, for the reason that Deeds ripen in the advanced concentration, Three accepted to ripen without progression.

[IV.189-92]

र्र. तर्च अ.चे. वाश्व अ.चे. वाष्ट्र त्या अ.चे. व्यव्य वि.चे. व्यव्य अ.चे. व्यव्य अ.चे. व्यव्य व्यव्यव्य व्यव्य व्यव्यव्य व्यव्यव्य व्यव्य व्यव्यव्य व्यव्यव्य व्यव्ययः व्यव्यव्ययः व्यव्यव्यव्ययः व्यव्यव्ययः व्यव्ययः व्यव्यव्ययः व्यव्

Now **some** people **make the claim that the ones below** the fourth concentration level—that is, the third on down—have **as well** those deeds that lead to **the "one between":** to a neutral experience. They say this is **for the reason that** these are **deeds** that **ripen in the advanced** stages of the **concentration** levels, and because we must **accept** it as possible for all **three** types of results **to ripen** at the same time, **without** a temporal **progression**.

यक्षेत्रायाया स्राप्तीया क्या क्षेत्र क्षेत्र

Next we present the various divisions of experience. After discussing a division into five different kinds, we will continue on to a more detailed treatment of the ripening of past deeds into future experience.

53
Five Types of Experience

|हॅं:वं:केन:न्दःसर्ह्यःस्व:न्दः। |न्द्येयाश्व:य:न्दःवे:क्राःश्चेत:न्दः। |सर्देव:शुक्र:नुःवे:गुरु:यःत्यश्व। |हॅंट्:वगुर:क्राय:स्थःधेव:वें।

Five are the different types of experience: That by very nature, a mental link, An object of focus, that by ripening, That which makes its appearance in a manner direct. [IV.193-6]

याञ्चयात्रात्वानुः त्वते त्यात्रात्वानुः त्यात्रात्वानुः त्यात्वानुः त्यात्वान्यः त्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यान्यः त्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्यात्यः त्यात्य

Now there are **five different types of experience**s that deeds bring about. An example of the first would be feelings, which are an experience or sensation **by** their **very nature**. Something like the mental function of contact represents the second type, or experience due to **a mental link**. And form for example is experienced by acting as the **object of** one's **focus**.

र्यो.शु.रयोदु.तामासेयि.यमास्त्रीयाग्नीमास्त्रीत्।यमात्यीयान्यात्रीयात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्य भूषार्याण्यात्रात्यात्रात्यास्त्रात्यास्त्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्

Virtuous and non-virtuous deeds are cases where something is experienced by its ripening. And an example of the final type, of something that one experiences as it makes its appearance in a direct manner, would be feelings.

यक्षिश्वायाया श्चीरावश्वता श्चीरावश्वतात्वे प्राप्तात्वे प्राप्ता यहात्वे प्राप्तात्वे प्रापत्वे प्रापत्वे प्रापत्ते प्रापत्वे प्रापत्वे प्रापत्ते

Our more detailed treatment of experiences that ripen from a past deed will begin with some general notes and continue to the particulars of deeds that definitely lead to a future experience. The general notes themselves touch first on the various divisions of deeds, then on the number of different deeds projected with different realms and types of beings.

54
Experiences that Ripen from Past Deeds

|त्राख्यस्याक्ष्यस्य स्थान्यः।
|याव्यस्य स्थान्यः क्ष्यः स्थान्यः स्थाः स्थाः

These are either definite or not;
The definite's three types because of those
Experienced as something seen and such.
Some claim that the kinds of deeds are five,
Others that the combinations are four.
Three of them act to project a discrete being.

[IV.197-202]

प्रे.ट्रश्रातवु.जश्रास्त्रात्वाश्रीयात्वार्त्रेयात्वार्त्वेयाः त्यात्वेश्वात्वयः कर्राताः श्रीट्रायमः वर्ष्वीयः याः श्रीयः वर्ष्वेयः याः श्रीयः वर्ष्वीयः याः वर्षेयः वर्यः वर्षेयः वर्यः वर्षेयः वर्यः वर्यः

Now there are three types of deeds which lead to a future experience through a process of ripening. **These** types of deeds themselves **are** grouped into two:

they are either definite, or not. The "definite" group is of three different types, because it includes (1) those deeds with results that are experienced as "something seen"—that is, deeds which ripen into an experience in this very life; (2) deeds with results that are experienced after one's rebirth—that is, in the very next life; and (3) deeds with results that are experienced in "some other" life—which is to say, in any life after the next.

स्रवरायान्यः स्रायान्यः विष्यः चेरः हो। सारेश्यायान्त्रेशः सुः सुः स्रायान्यः स्रायान्यः स्रायान्यः स्रायान्यः

Some people claim that the kinds of deeds are five: they arrive at this figure by dividing indefinite types of deeds into (1) those which will definitely ripen but at an indefinite time, and (2) those where neither ripening itself nor its timing is definite.

द्याय। यद्वियामात्राद्या यद्वियामात्राद्या यद्वियामात्राद्याम्याद्वियामात्राद्याः यद्वियामात्राद्याः यद्वियामा व्याम्यसम्भवयास्याद्वे याम्यसम्भवयास्याद्वे याम्यसम्भवयाद्वे यद्वे याम्यसम्भवयास्य यद्वियामाः द्वायाः यद्वियामात्राद्वे याम्यस्य यद्वे याम्यस्य यद्वे याम्यस्य यद्वे याम्यस्य यद्वे याम्यस्य यद्वे याम्यस्य य

Others—namely, the Exemplist group in the Sutrist school—claim that the possible combinations which hold true in this regard are four. They say there are (1) deeds which are definite to ripen but at no definite time, (2) deeds which should ripen at a definite time but which are not definite to ripen at all, (3) deeds which are definite in both respects, and (4) deeds which are definite in neither respect.

ग्रीत्राप्तराप्तराप्ति क्षेत्रात्त्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र

One may ask which of these deeds projects a discrete being in the future. **Three of them act to project a discrete being,** but deeds with results that you see in this very life do not. This is because they ripen upon the very same stream of heaps which performed the original deed.

Next we examine the number of different deeds that can be projected with different realms and types of beings.

55
Deeds Projected for Different
Realms and Beings

Every one has four projections each; In the hells, three of virtuous. A stable child does none to experience born At that for which he's overcome desire. Neither realized, in others even; Neither the unstable, desire and peak.

[IV.203-8]

दशःश्चीतः प्यतः त्यां वायाः तः वायाः व्यवः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्याः

One may ask which different deeds can be projected with different realms and beings. Every one of the five different types of beings each has all four kinds of projections produced by deeds. In the hells through there are only three projections of virtuous types of deeds that are possible. Here there can be no projection of a virtuous deed that will bring one a result that he sees in the very same life, because it is impossible for any deed to ripen into a pleasant result in the hells.

Next let's consider a **child** [non-Arya] who is **stable** and has overcome his desire for any one or number of the eight different levels. He **does no** deeds of the type that will lead **to** an **experience** there after being re**born at** a level **for which he has overcome desire.** For the fact is that for his next life he will not take any rebirth at a level for which he's lost desire.

र्वात्तर्भात्त्र्वात्रायदेन्द्रः स्वात्रायदेन्द्रः स्वात्त्रः स्वात्त्रः स्वात्त्रः स्वात्त्रः स्वात्त्रः स्व द्रश्चेद्रः द्रश्चुरः दुः सः चद्रः स्वात्रः स्वाद्रः स्वाद्रः द्रश्चेदः द्रश्चेद्रः स्वाद्रः स्वाद

Next let's consider a **realized** being who is stable and has overcome desire for any one or number of the seven levels between. **Neither** does he perform any deed which will lead to an experience at such a level after being reborn there; what's more, he does not **even** perform any deed which will lead to an experience at such a level **in** any **other** life beyond the next. This is because he will never again take a birth at a level for which he has overcome desire.

यद्र्यक्षायःश्चेत्रश्चेत्रायः विष्ण्यः विषणः वि

Let's finally consider a realized being who has overcome his desire for the desire realm and the "peak" level, but who is **unstable**. **Neither** does he ever perform any deed which will lead to an experience subsequent to a rebirth, for either his next life or for any life beyond, in the **desire** realm or **"peak"** level. A realized being who has degenerated from the state of having overcome desire for the desire realm and "peak" level is someone that we say has "lost

his result." But it is impossible for such a person to die during the period between losing his result and gaining it back again.

56
Projections with Different
Realms and Beings, Continued

|श्रेत्रायन्य स्थायर्त्त्रायस्थाः श्रु|
|दियेद्राया इस्याया हैः शुः यहिस्य।
|देवेद्राया इस्याया हैः शुः यहस्य दुः ध्येद्र|
|देवेद्राया इस्याया हैया। विद्याया स्थित।

Twenty-two different projections had with Inbetween beings in the realm of desire. One is the type with results that you see; It is but a single discrete type.

[IV.209-12]

यश्चिमञ्जूर्यायर रिकास्य स्थान स्था

One may ask whether deeds project their energy with beings of the state between death and rebirth as well. There are **twenty-two different projections** had with inbetween beings in the realm of desire. These are the inbetween being himself, the five periods in the womb, and the five periods out of the womb: these eleven are then divided into two types each, those which will definitely be experienced and those that will not.

चाक्षेत्रायसेत्र चीत्रणीः व्यक्षः चीत्रणायीत्रायीत्रायस्य स्वर्णायस्य चीत्र पायस्य स्वर्णायस्य स्वर्णायस्य स्वर स्वर्णायस्य पात्र स्वर्षाः स्वर्णाणीः सुद्रायीत्र स्वर्णाः स्वर्यः स्वर्णाः स्व

मुरा यक्ष्यःयःदी

The one group of eleven which are definite is considered to come from the type of deeds that come with results that you see in the same life. This is because "it"—this group—is counted but a single discrete being: the heaps that were present when the energy of the deeds was collected, and the heaps that are present when this energy ripens into an experience, have both been sent forth by the same projecting energy born from deeds of the past.

Next we consider the particulars of deeds that definitely lead to a future experience.

57
Deeds that Definitely Ripen

वित्रः स्वर्धत्यः स्वरः स्वरः

Those are definite which involve fierce
Mental affliction or faith, an object of special
Qualities, anything done on a
Continual basis, killing father or mother.
Deeds with results which are something seen,
Due to features of the object or thought;
Anything which was something certain to ripen,
Where completely free of the level's desire.

[IV.213-20]

स्याश्चेत्र स्वाश्चेत्र स्वाश्चेत्र त्या स्वार्थ स्वाश्चेत्र स्वार्थ स्वाश्चेत्र स्वार्थ स्वाश्चेत्र स्वार्थ स्वार्य स्वार्थ स्वार्थ स्वार्य स्वार्थ स्वार्थ स्वार्य स्वार्थ स्वार्थ स्वार्थ स्वार्थ स्वार्य

"Just what," one may ask, "do you mean when you mention types of deeds that are certain to ripen?" **Those** deeds **are definite** (will definitely ripen into a future experience) **which involve** any of the following:

- 1) fierce emotions, of either mental affliction or faith;
- 2) **an object of special qualities**—that is, deeds performed with respect to the Gems;
- 3) anything done on a continual basis; and
- 4) **killing** one's **father or mother**, even when this is done with meritorious intent.

१२.४.अब्रूट.क्र्अ.यर्चश्र.त्री । विश्व.यत्ये.यं.यं.त्रीयः विश्व.यं.विश्व.यं.यं.त्रीयः विश्व.यं.यं.विश्व.यं.विश्य.यं.विश्व.यं.विश

"In the lines above," one may continue, "you mentioned that `one is the type with results that you see.' Can you describe this further?" **Deeds with results which are something seen** in the same life are this way **due to** special **features of the object or thought** involved.

श्रेर्र्स्य स्थान्य विकास स्थान्य विकास स्थान्य स्थान

A case of a deed which, because of the special features of the object involved, turned into the type that gives a result in the very same life would be as follows. In one of his former lives, our Teacher was once a certain monk who had mastered all three sections of the canon. There had been a steady increase in quarreling among the community of monks. One monk—who had himself committed the sections of the canon to memory—managed to bring the different sides to an agreement. This angered the other monk (the one who was a master of the canon), who made the sarcastic statement that "A woman has settled a women's quarrel." Because of this deed the monk turned into a woman in that very life, and took five hundred births thereafter as a woman as well.

चिश्रात्तश्र. यु. के दे. जा. श्राप्त के दे. जा. के दे. जा. के दे. जा. के दे. जा. के त्या के त

An instance of a deed which, because of special features of the thought involved, turns into the type that gives a result that you see in this very life would be as follows. King Kanaka had a certain eunuch by the name of "Longwa." He met someone driving a herd of five hundred cattle and asked the man what he planned to do. "We're going to castrate them," was the reply. Overcome with compassion, Longwa managed to save all the cattle from their fate: as a result, his own organ was restored in the very same life.

त्यादाः स्त्रेत्रः स्वरः स्त्रेत्रः स्वाधाद्यः स्वरः स्त्रेत्रः स्वरः स्त्रेत्रः स्वरः स्त्रेत्रः स्वरः स्त्रेतः स्वरः स्वरः

Aside from the above, anything which was something certain to ripen at any particular level can also constitute a deed which gives a result that you see in the very same life, in cases where the person has become completely free of any desire for this level.

58
Objects with Very Special Features

|यन्यात्वर्ष्याः नुर्स्यः क्ष्याः विद्यसः विद्यसः विद्यसः विद्यसः विद्यसः विद्यसः विद्यसः विद्यसः विद्यसः विद्य |भिष्यः विद्यस्य विद्यस्य विद्यसः विद्य |यादः निष्याः विद्यस्य विद्यसः विद्यस

Help or harm to any of the following Leads to quick experience of a result: Anyone coming out of cessation or love, No affliction, seeing, result of destroying.

[IV.221-4]

श्री-त्रभूका-तर्तुःश्रीम्।

यक्षका-ता-द्र-तर्त्रवा-क्षिम्। क्रिक्नियाका-वर्त्त-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण्य-वर्ष्ण-वर्ष-वर्ष्ण-वर्ष-वर्ष्ण-वर्ण-वर्ष्ण-वर

One may ask about the features that make an object special. Help or harm which you perform towards anyone who has just come out of cessation leads to a quick experience of a result, for it is almost as if such a person has just come back from nirvana. Help and harm too towards anyone who has just come out of a meditation on immeasurable love or a state of one-pointed concentration where he has no affliction at all also leads to the speedy experience of a result. This is because such persons are helping every living being; they are involved with a willingness to accept the ultimate personal responsibility, free of any affliction; and they are totally imbued with an immeasurable kind of merit, very sharp and clear.

श्रद्भारत्यात्रात्र्येत्र। यम् त्य्युम् हो। देशाश्रर्वेद् श्रुद्भारायात्य्यम् श्रद्भार्याये यात्रात्याय्याय्यायात्यायाः श्रुद्धाः स्थर्याय्यायायाय्यायायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्याय्यायाय्याय्यायाय्यायय्याय्याय्याय्याय्याय्यायय्याय्

Help or harm done towards a person who has just come out of the path of **seeing** is another example of a deed that leads to a quick result. This is true because this person has just attained, for the first time, an unstained state where he has gotten rid of every undesirable object eliminated by the path of seeing.

Finally, beneficial or harmful acts towards a person who has just come out of the state where he achieved the **result of destroying** the enemy also lead to the quick experience of a result. The reason here is that the person has just achieved, for the first time, the unstained state where he has gotten rid of every undesirable object eliminated by the path of habituation.

चया. पे. यत्वरात्त्र्। भाष्ट्रार्था स्त्रात्त्रात्त्रे क्षेत्रात्त्रा स्त्रात्त्रे स्त्रात्त्रात्त्रे स्त्रात्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रात्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रात्त्रे स्त्रत्ते स्त्रात्त्रे स्त्रत्ते स्त्रत्ते स्त्रत्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रत्ते स्त्रते स्त्रत्ते स्त्रत्ते स्त्रते स्त्रते स्त्रत

Help or harm performed towards those who have just come out of a state where they have achieved one of the two results—where they need either return or not return to the realm of desire—does not though lead to a speedy result. First of all, their "new" condition of having reached an unstained state free of the objects eliminated by the path of seeing has by this time become somewhat old. Secondly, they have yet to reach the unstained state where they have just managed, for the first time, to rid themselves of the objects stopped by the path of habituation.

We turn now to the third and final step in our discussion of deeds involving a sensation of pleasure and so on. This is a presentation of the correlation between specific sensations and the deeds from which they result. Following the actual presentation we will go into some detail on the subject of mental illness.

ह्रेबार्स्टरायायाके वार्येका यार्स्ट्रेबाका यादी त्यावा रहे वा के वार्येका वा

The following selection is from the *Great Book on the Steps of the Path,* composed by Lord Tsongkapa (1357-1419):

Here is the third section, a presentation on the consequences of the various kinds of bad deeds. We proceed in three parts, beginning with what are called the "ripened" consequences.

यश्याविरः यश्चिर्याय।

यश्यायश्चर्यार्थः स्त्रेर्यायाः स्त्रेर्यायः स्त्रेर्यः स्त्रेर्यायः स्त्रेर्यायः स्त्रेर्यायः स्त्रेर्यायः स्त्रेर्यः स्त्रेर्यः स्त्रेर्यः स्त्रेर्यायः स्त्रेर्यायः स्त्रेर्यः स्त्रेयः स्त्रेर्यः स

Now each one of the ten paths of karma can itself be divided into three kinds—lesser, medium, and greater—depending on the intensity of the three poisons. The *Main Stage of Levels* states that, from the ten greater instances of killing and the rest, one is born into the hells. It says that from medium instances of each of the ten you take birth as an insatiable spirit; and from the ten lesser instances, you are born as an animal.

The *Sutra* on the *Ten Levels* however states the consequences of two of the kinds of instances, the lesser and the medium, in reverse of this.

ल्ट्याःश्चित्रग्रीश्राःस्ट्यायाः न्टाः कुटाः याः याश्चित्याः याः याः विष्याः याः न्टाः। अप्ताः याः याः विष्याः याः विष्याः याः विष्याः याः विष्याः विष्यः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्यः विष्याः विष्यः विष्य

The "consistent" consequences are as follows. Even if you do manage to escape the realms of misery and take birth as a human, the following respective results occur to you:

- 1) Your life is short.
- 2) You don't have enough to live on.
- 3) You have problems keeping your partner from others.
- 4) People don't believe what you say, even when you're telling the truth.
- 5) You lose friends easily.
- 6) You hear things as bad sounds.
- 7) No one listens to you.
- 8) Your personality is dominated by desire.
- 9) Your personality is dominated by anger.
- 10) Your personality is dominated by stupidity.

The Chapter on the True and the Sutra on the Ten Levels state that there are two such consequences for each of the ones given here; even if you do manage to take birth as a human,

- 1) Your life is short, and you get sick easily.
- 2) You don't have enough to live on, and what you do have is all just common property with others.
- 3) The people who work around you are "inconsistent," which here means unreliable, and you find yourself having a lot of competition for your partner.
- 4) No one believes what you say, even when you are speaking the truth, and others are always deceiving you.
- 5) The people around you are always fighting against one another, and have an undesirable character.
- 6) You hear many unpleasant things, and when others talk to you it always seems to you as if they want to start a fight.
- 7) No one respects what you say—no one thinks that what you say has any particular value, and you are afflicted with a lack of confidence.
- 8) Your personality is dominated by desire, and you are never satisfied with what you have.
- 9) You are always finding yourself without help, or never find the help you need; and you are always hurting others, or always being hurt by others.
- 10) You become a person who keeps harmful views, or a deceitful person.

। व्यः अव्योदः अर्थः अर्थः अर्थः अर्थः अर्थः व्याः वार्षेत्रः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व

বর্ম-বর্ণি-র্ম্বর্ পর্র্বর্ শ্রী-বর্ষ ব্র-ন্-র্ম-রা-র্ম্বর্ম শ্রু-নে-র্ম্বু-মর্ব্রর্-শ্রী-বর্ষ

Great lamas of the past have expressed the position that it is a consequence of consistent *action* where as a karmic result of killing you become someone who takes pleasure in killing and the rest. It is a consequence of consistent *experience* then when you have to undergo the results just listed.

यक्षेत्रक्षाः केर क्षेत्रक्षः निर्मा क्षेत्रक्षः निर्मा क्षेत्रक्षः क्षेत्रक्षः क्षेत्रक्षः क्षेत्रक्षः क्षेत्रक्षः क्षेत्रक्षः निर्मा क्षेत्रक्षः कष्णे क्षेत्रक्षः क्षेत्रक्षः क्षेत्रक्षः कष्णे कष

Next is what we call the "environmental" or "dominant" consequence. Here for example the consequence of killing expresses itself in the outer world around you. Food, drink, medicine, the crops in the fields, and other such things have very little power; they are always inferior; they have little nutrition or potency; they are hard to digest, and they cause disease in you. Because of this the majority of the living beings around you die before reaching the end of a full life.

 $\frac{1}{2}$ พพพ.ศ. 2เพิ่น. นน์ นั้น. น. 2เพิ่น. น. 2

Because you have stolen, then the crops are few and far between; the crops have no power to remove hunger; they spoil; they never come up; dry spells stay on too long; it rains too much; the crops dry up, or die off.

र्यवाग्वाधेमञ्जेषे व्यवरावाष्ठे परायत्मास्य परायत्मे श्री व्यवरावाष्ठे व्यवरावाष्ठे व्यवरावाष्ठे व्यवरावाष्ठे व

Because you have done wrong sex, you live in a place where there is piss and shit all around, and mud and dirt and filth, and everything stinks, and everywhere seems unpleasant and distasteful.

द्रान्तर्भुक्षान्तर्भु विदायमान्त्र। नाम्ह्रम्नु स्वर्भित्तर्भु विदायमान्त्र। नाम्ह्रम्नु स्वर्भु विदायमान्त्र। नाम्ह्रम्नु स्वर्भु स्वर्भु विदायमान्त्र।

Because you have lied, you live in a world where, when you undertake farming or some work in cooperation with other people, in the end the work fails to prosper, and the people can't work well together, and for the most part everyone is cheating one another, and is afraid, and where there are many things to be afraid of.

स्'यदे'ते। यार्स्यायायम्'यत्तरः त्र्रात्येत्रः त्रात्येत्। यार्थेतः त्रायः त्रायः त्रायः त्रायः त्रायः त्रायः व त्रायदे वायः यात्रायः व्यवस्य व्यवस्य विद्यायः विद्यायः विद्यायः विद्यायः विद्यायः विद्यायः विद्यायः विद्यायः

Because you have split people up with your talk, the very ground in the place you live is all uneven, covered with crags and gullies, full of highs and lows, so that you can travel only with difficulty, and where you are always afraid, and there are many things to be afraid of.

द्यास्त्र संदेश्वी अस्त्रीयशर्भेट्र प्राप्त स्वास्त्र स

Because you have spoken harsh words, the ground where you live is covered with obstacles like the trunks of fallen trees, and thorns, and stones, and clods of dirt, and lots of sharp broken pieces of glass; it's rough, and dreary; no streams, or lakes, or springs of water; the whole earth is parched, poisoned with salt and borax, burning hot, useless, threatening; a place where there are many things to fear.

तर.लट.वर्चश.यी.वक्रयोश.त.र्टट.रीश.शी.भु.वक्षयोश.त.रटट.श.श्रीथ.तर.श्रीय.तर. कूयो.प्रील.चयु.थ्री वर्चश.यीयु.र्जूच.त्रीट.ला.वर्चश.यी.भु.वक्षयोश.त.रटट.श.श्रीथ.तर.

Because you have talked meaninglessly, fruits refuse to grow on the trees, or they start to grow at the wrong times, never at the right times, and seem ripe when they're still not ripe, or their roots are frail, or they can't stay long; there are no places to take your leisure, no parks, no glades, no pools of cool water, and many things around to make you afraid.

चर्द्रपःश्रेश्रशःभ्रोत्ते। सुत्रःश्रुशःर्द्वेषाश्चर्यात्रश्चरात्ते। स्वरःश्वरःश्वरः स्वरःश्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्व

Because you have coveted what others have, then each and every good thing you ever manage to find starts to get worse, and less and less, never more, each one of them, with the passing of each of the four seasons, and in every month, and even day by day.

मुंद्र'यं श्रें म्या या स्ट्रा प्रस्ता मुंद्र'यं श्रें म्या स्ट्रा स्ट्

Because you have wished bad things on others, you live in a world of chaos, where diseases spread, and evil is everywhere, and plague, and conflict, and fear from the armies of other nations; where there are many lions or leopards or other dangerous animals; where there are everywhere venomous snakes or scorpions or poison biting worms; you live surrounded by harmful spirits, and thieves or muggers, and the like.

त्र व्याप्त त्र त्र व्याप्त त्र व्याप्त त्र व्याप्त त्याप्त त्यापत त्याप्त त्यापत त्याप्त त्याप्त त्याप्त त्यापत्य त्याप्त त्यापत्य त्यापत्य त्यापत्य त्यापत्य त्यापत्य त्यापत्य त्यापत्य त्य त्यापत्य त्य त्यापत्य त्य त्यापत्य त

वर्रे वर सूर वर्ष वाष्ट्र वाष्ट्र में वर्ष वर्ष वर्षे वर्ष स्वर्ष वर्षे ।

Because you have held wrong views, then you live in a world where the single highest source of happiness is steadily disappearing from the earth; a world where people think that things that are unclean and things that are suffering are actually nice, and happiness; a world where there is no place to go, no one to help, nothing to protect you.

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Five: How Karma is Carried, According to the Mind-Only School

Selection One: The Mind-Only School on how mental seeds cause our perceptions

The selections are all taken from *Illumination of the True Thought,* written by Lord Tsongkapa:

या प्राचित्रं प्राचित्रं प्राच्या विषयम् । विषय

. . .The second part has two sections of its own: stating the position of the other school, and then denying this position. Here is the first.

This is how the presentation was made. Then those of the Mind-Only School come back, considering and then presenting a position which by itself reflects the primary belief of their entire system.

या दशक्षायालवर्ग्वीसार्यात्ववर्ग्वीसार्यात्ववर्ग्वायात्ववर्ग्यात्वा देशाव्याक्त्यात्वर्ग्वायात्ववर्ग्वीसार्यात्वर्

चर.वर्चीर.बुट.। चर.वर्चीर.बुट.।

They speak first of the mental seed, the energy, from which the "mind of the eye" (which refers to the consciousness of the eye) comes forth. Another case of consciousness, as it is in the process of stopping, in the next moment plants this mental seed in the foundation consciousness. When this seed ripens later, it produces that consciousness of the eye, one which takes after the earlier one.

स्टानी हो श्रेया मी ह्रा विश्व देतु श्रायदे हो । दे प्रविद दु प्रायदे हो । ये प्रविद प्रयादे हो । ये प्रविद हो । ये प्रविद

Consider now this energy as it exists immediately before producing the consciousness of the eye related to it; consider the energy which acts as the immediate basis for this eye consciousness. Normal people, out of ignorance, conceive of this as the physical faculty of the eye. In truth though a power of the eye which is something separate from consciousness is something that doesn't even exist. This same explanation applies to all the remaining physical faculties.

वि:त्यःश्रेयाःवेशःश्चेःचद्यःश्चेःचयाःकयाशःदेःदेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश वि:त्यःश्चेयाःवेशःश्चेःचदःश्चेःचयाःकयाशःदेःदेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्चेदःश्च

Here the cause behind the consciousness of the eye, the mental seed, is the primary factor behind it. The faculty of the eye is the component of the body that provides a contributing circumstance.

क्याबाङ्गीयःतवः भ्रावायाः विषाणीः नर्द्वा स्त्रीयः वाद्वायः याद्वायः भ्रावायः भ्राव्याः विषाणीः नर्द्वायः स्व

Here when the physical faculty of the eye is presented as the direct cause of the consciousness of the eye, the real intent is to refer to the situation where the mental seed which produces the eye consciousness is ripening. They are not talking here of what we normally think of as the physical faculty of the eye.

यक्षिः त्यान्त्रास्य विष्य विषयः व

Regarding this the text called Middle and Extremes states,

The combination of the objects and the person,
The base consciousness, is a consciousness that appears;
In reality this is not the being.

Here the word "objects" refers to form and the rest, and "the person" refers to the five faculties; the lines are describing a consciousness that arises and which appears to be them, but which is actually foundation consciousness. Master Stiramati also explains the physical faculties as the object of foundation consciousness. The point then is that those of the Mind-Only School who accept the idea of a foundation consciousness believe that the physical faculties of the eye and so on are actually the condition of the foundation consciousness appearing as the physical faculties.

तर्ने, ये त्यर स्वात्त्र त्या वीर त्यत् स्थात्तर स्वात्त्र स्थात्तर स्वात्त्र स्थात्तर स्वात्त्र स्थात्तर स्वा स्थात्तर त्येश्वात्त त्या स्वात्त्र स्थात्तर स्वात्त्र स्थात्तर स्वात्त्र स्थात्तर स्वात्त्र स्थात्त्र स्थात्त । स्थात्त्र त्यर स्वात्त्र त्या स्वात्त्र स्थात्तर स्वात्तर स्वात्तर स्वात्तर स्वात्तर स्वात्तर स्वात्तर स्वात

चैश्रायशर्त्त्रम्वत्रम्वत्यः स्थान्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम्यस्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम्यम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम्यस्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम्यस्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम्यस्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम्यस्त्रम्यस्त्रम्यस्त्रम् विश्वास्त्रम्यस्त्रम्

Once they have demonstrated that there is no such thing as physical faculties of the eye and so on that could ever be anything separate from consciousness itself, then they must show how form as well is nothing other than consciousness. To do this they give the following description. Consider now the five types of consciousness that, according to general belief, arise from the five physical faculties. It is not that there are any outside physical objects such as the color blue and so on which the consciousness has to grasp to. Rather, blue and the rest are only an appearance which occurs through the ripening of the very mental seed which was planted in the foundation consciousness and from which consciousness itself has arisen. Not realizing this fact, people look at the mind appearing as blue or whatever and accept or interpret these appearances as being outer objects.

Selection Two: How the Middle-Way School says the mental seeds of karma work

द्रान्यस्त्रिक्षः स्त्री न्यान्यस्त्रः विद्रान्यस्त्रः विद्रान्यस्तिः विद्रान्यस्त्रः विद्रान्यस्तिः विद्रान्यस्तिः विद्रान्य

Here is the second part [of a different] discussion [about where the Madhyamika school believes the mental seeds from karma are planted, since they do not accept the concept of foundation consciousness]. One may begin with the following question:

Suppose you deny then the existence of a foundation consciousness. Nonetheless you must accept that mental seeds from virtue or non-virtue do get planted, and that consequences do arise from the ripening of these mental seeds. After all, the autocommentary to Entering the Middle Way does state that "For time without beginning, in the suffering cycle of life, the mental seeds for things have been planted, and have then ripened, and have then been interpreted by people as the things themselves." There are as well many other quotations which mention the same thing. And it would be incorrect to say that there existed no basis or place where these mental seeds were planted. What then, according to your view, provides this place for the seeds to be planted?

चयाःक्याकाः श्रीं चद्रः याबिरः चिवरः दित्र स्थाः यावाः क्याक्याकाः श्रीं चद्रः याबिरः चिवरः याविरः चिवरः चिवर

According to those who accept the idea of a foundation consciousness, the thing called "afflicted mind" focuses on foundation consciousness and holds it to be "me"; they say that this foundation consciousness then is the place where the mental seeds stay. In our [Madhyamika] school too we have a similar concept; we say that the base which is stained with the mental seed is exactly that thing that you focus on with your simple, natural awareness of yourself and call "me."

त्र.क्षेत्र.यो ट्र.लट.५४.वयोय.ययु.ययो.कयोश.भू.ययु.योथ्यूत्र.याश्चर्यात्र.प्रेट्र.यो तथा शुश्रश्च.प्रेट्र.युश्च.योट.ये.जा शुश्रश्च.यय्यात्र.यो.प्रेयाश.यट्ट.जा.ट्रेय्र.क्षेट्र.लुश्च. तथा शुश्रश्च.यो.क्षेट्र.युश्च.योट.यो.जा शुश्रश्च.य्यात्र.यो.प्रेयाश.यट्ट.जा.ट्रेय्र.क्षेट्र.लुश्च. वि.चं.यट्या.ययोजा.जश्च। शुश्रश्च.ययो.कयोश.भू.ययु.योथ्य.याश्चरश्च.याहे.येश.

One may ask the following:

The autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* states that the stream of the mind is the basis where the mental seeds are planted. How does this fit into what you have just said?

The very thing we call the simple "me" is something which results from a label being applied to the *mind*, or consciousness. It also goes on in a *stream*. From this point of view then we can also refer to it as the "stream of the mind." And even if what you mean by a "stream" is the continuation of later, similar instances of mind itself, you can say that it too is the basis which is stained by mental seeds of particular occasions.

यह. क्षेत्रः मुचीशात्तरः ब्रीयः म्रीयः म्री

Here is how the mental seed for ignorance works. The autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* says,

That thing which tends to stop, and yet still stain, and then continue on in the flow of the mind is what we refer to as a 'mental seed.' The expressions 'continuity' and 'habit' and 'root' and 'mental seed' for the state of mental affliction all refer to the same thing. This is something that Listeners and Self-Made "Buddhas" are unable to eliminate even though they may already have eliminated the state of mental affliction itself through using the unstained path. It's similar to what

happens with sesame butter or flowers; you may already remove these things from the scene, but the vase in which the flowers were, or the piece of cloth that the butter stained, still retain some subtle trace of them due to the previous contact.

How then could there be any sense to saying that there is another basis, a second one, on top of the one mentioned here, where other types of mental seeds, like those of virtuous deeds and non-virtuous deeds and the rest, are planted?

One might wonder about something else:

Let's talk about the period while you are in the "uninterrupted" stage of the path of seeing [the actual direct perception of emptiness]. I can accept that at this point the negative thoughts eliminated by this path are no longer present, but we would have to say that the negative things eliminated by the path of habituation are still there, in a dormant way. At this particular point in time, the consciousness of the mind is unstained, unaffected by the mental seed which causes the mistaken state of mind where the appearance and actuality of things are different from one another. As such none of these things could lie dormant here, due to its very quality at the time. There is no consciousness of the senses that could act as the basis for those mental seeds, and it would be improper to say that physical form could ever provide

such a basis either. According to you, moreover, there's no foundation consciousness. I would have to think then that there is no basis at all where these dormant things could stay.

And yet there is no such problem, for at this point in time it is the simple "me" which is providing the basis for the dormant things eliminated by the path of habituation to stay. You can apply this reasoning as well to all the other cases involving things to be eliminated, and the antidotes which eliminate them.

Selection Three: The Middle-Way School on the question of where the seeds of karma stay until they give their result

त्रिश्चा प्रति प्रति प्रति प्रति । प्

Here is the second point [of still another discussion]. One may ask the following:

Those who believe that entities have no natural existence [meaning the Madhyamika Prasangika (or Consequence) School] do not accept the concepts of a foundation consciousness and the like; how then is it that they can still assert that all the workings of karma and its consequences are totally right and proper?

All the Buddhist schools, whether higher schools or lower schools, accept the principle that the consequences of pleasure and pain and so on arise from

virtuous and non-virtuous karma or actions, even though the original karma and its eventual consequences may be separated by a very long period of time. The problem though is that, if the karma stays around during the entire period up to the point at which it gives its consequence, it would have to be unchanging. An unchanging thing though is incapable of affecting anything, and so you could never have a relationship where karma gave rise to any consequence.

स्रोत्यात्रस्य त्यात्रः स्रोत्त्र स्रोत्त्र स्रोत्त्र स्रोत्य स्रोत्त्र स्रोत्य स्रोत्त्र स्रोत्य स्रोत्त्र स्रोत्य

From the moment after you complete a karma or deed, that deed is finished and gone. During the entire period from that point up to the point at which the consequence actually occurs, the deed no longer exists. A deed which is already gone is no longer a thing that can have any affect on anything. How then does a deed or karma ever produce any kind of consequence? Here is how we explain this problem:

योषन् री. श्रीयात्र स्वराय्य स्वराय स्वराय्य स्वराय स्वराय

Let's consider the deed or karma as it exists up to the point right after the moment in which the deed is completed; that is, let's consider the deed as it approaches its end. The energy of the deed has to be stored somewhere, and so some thinkers have invented the idea of some kind of foundation consciousness for it to stay. Others have said that there is something which is changing but neither mental nor physical, something they call "the fact of not just going away"; they say it is something that exists separately from the two types of deeds [virtue and non-virtue], and that it resembles the document

written up for a loan that has to be repaid. Still others have invented the idea that there is another changing thing which is neither mental nor physical, again different from the two kinds of deeds themselves, something they call a "hold."

Others finally have invented the idea of a stream of consciousness which is stained with the mental seed of the deed. This then is why, they say, that it is no contradiction for the deed to produce its consequence later, even after a very long time. The deed or karma plants a mental seed in the foundation consciousness, and so the mental seed is the result of the deed. This mental seed continues on in a stream of similar forms until eventually it produces the consequence. Thus, they say, the consequence of the original karma is something that is produced indirectly, via a medium. This same type of idea applies to the other three positions expressed.

र्रेश्चें, चटु, लट, टर्ट्र, म. लुर्य, त्यां प्राप्त क्षेत्र, या जुर्य, या ज

The first of these positions belongs to a certain group within the Mind-Only School. The second position is explained by Master Avalokitavrata to be that of the Detailist School—of a certain section other than the Kashmiri Detailists. The third position also belongs to a specific group within the Detailist School. It is not completely clear where the fourth position belongs, but since it is

consistent with the ninth chapter of the autocommentary to the *Treasure House* of *Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha)*, it would appear to be an alternate belief of the Sutrists and the Kashmiri Detailists.

Although the Kashmiris do accept the idea of a "hold," they do not assert that a hold could be produced by the two types of karma as something retained by the hold. The position here though belongs to someone who does assert this, and this is the point of the phrase "according to someone."

According to someone now of the Madhyamika Consequence school, the deed or karma is not something which arises in and of itself, and so, for this very reason, neither is it something which finishes through any nature of its own. Nonetheless it is no contradiction to say that something which never finishes through any nature of its own can still produce a consequence. As such a consequence can come from a deed even if we never accept the idea of a foundation consciousness or the like.

You must understand then that this is why the two kinds of karma can already have finished in the mental continuum of any given sentient being, and yet still after a long time—even after the passing of many millions of years—these deeds can nonetheless produce their consequences "perfectly," which is to say,

without any confusion. [That is, good deeds lead to pleasure, and bad deeds lead to pain, and there is never any case where this law somehow goes wrong, and good deeds lead to pain, or bad deeds to pleasure.]

Given all this, the connection between deeds and their consequences is, in this school, purely and totally correct.

ययोग्रश्ताःश्चरेत्वः द्वीरः रू. ब्रिश्वः वर्ण्यायोः ताल्रायेश्चरं व्यायोश्वः ताल्वः द्वीयः ताल्वः द्वीयः ताल्वः द्वीयः ताल्वः द्वीयः ताल्वः द्वीयः ताल्वः त्वीयः ताल्वः त्वियः त्वियः त्वियः त्वियः ताल्वः त्वियः त

The point of all this is that all four of the positions above, as they attempt to answer the problem raised, do so from a viewpoint of accepting that a deed has a beginning that exists by definition and an ending too that exists by definition. They are agreeing as well that the later condition of the deed's having ended is something that exists by definition. The Master [Chandrakirti] is stating that it is improper to answer the problem raised above by saying that, "Even though the ending of the deed is that way, it's no problem, because we believe in foundation consciousness." He is denying all these positions, for the reason that there simply doesn't even exist any beginning or ending of a deed that could occur through any nature of its own.

त्रश्चरः चर्लुषः च्रीश्चारवायाः याः श्चार्त्वेद्वः । त्रशः च्रिशः प्रदेशः चर्लुषः च्रीशः व्यायाश्चरः वर्लुषः च्रीशः च्रुषः च्रुषः च्रीशः च्रुषः च्रु

दे.रर.यधुराग्रीशायीयात्रःयवीरायशास्त्रीयात्रः मुख्यात्रः सूच्यात्रः सूच्यात्रः सूच्यात्रः सूच्यात्रः सूच्यात्र विष्ठाः त्रुप्तः सूच्याः सूच्य

The Master, to demonstrate how this way of answering reflects exactly the position of the Arya [Nagarjuna], quotes the following statement from the *Root Text on Wisdom:*

Because the karma never begins, Because it has no nature of its own, And since it has never even begun, Neither then can it simply go away.

The lines are saying that, because there is no such thing as a karma that exists through its own nature, no such karma could ever have a beginning that came in and of itself. Because of this, it is completely impossible for a karma ever to end by any nature of its own. It is illogical to think of the subsequent condition of the deed's having ended and invent some idea of something that can never just go away.

Selection Four: What the Middle-Way School means when it says things are just the results of conceptualization

ह्मानदुः नियः चीश्रायविचान्तरः चीश्रीरश्रायः चीश्रायह्मानदुः। नियः चीश्रायविचान्तरः चीश्रायविचान्तरः चीश्रायद्भान्तरः चीश्रायद्भान्तरः चीश्रायदेशः चित्रः चित्रः चीश्रायदेशः चित्रः चीश्रायदेशः चित्रः चित्रः चीश्रायदेशः चित्रः चित्रः चीश्रायदेशः चित्रः चित

This section [still another one] has two parts to it. First we will show how it is that objects are established through the process of conceptualization, and then describe what it is to grasp to true existence, wherein one holds things as existing in the opposite way. Here is the first.

The Sutra Requested by Upali includes the following lines:

A splash of pleasing flowers open their petals, Golden palaces blaze in breathtaking beauty; Look for their maker, but you'll never find him, For all of these are built of conceptions— The world is an invention of conceptions.

The verse is describing how objects are established through the process of conceptualization, and there are as well many other statements of the Buddha that describe how every single object in the universe is nothing more than a creation of conceptions.

श्चीयःतः ह्रेयाः तथायश्चायाः वह्याः हेतः यात्रः वह्याः हेतः वह्याः हेतः वह्याः हेतः वह्याः हेतः वह्याः वह्याः हेतः वह्याः वह्याः हेतः वह्याः हेतः वह्याः वह

The Sixty Verses on Reasoning say as well,

The world is something that ignorance causes; Why? For the Buddhas say it is so. And why then would it be wrong to say That this world is only conceptions.

The meaning of this verse, according to the commentary, is that none of the many worlds that exist does so through some essence of its own: none of them are anything more than products of our conception.

यायम्याश्वास्त्रः श्रीयाः स्ट्रीयः स्वास्त्रः या स्वास्त्रः स्वास

थर:न्यार्नेबन्दे:र्राचीर्नेच्यायुवायर्थे ।हेवायन्तेनेव्यावर्देशहःक्षे

The 400 Verses says as well:

Without conceptions, desire and such Are nothing that can even exist; Why then would anyone with a brain Believe in reality and conception?

The commentary to the work states that—

Things that can't even exist in the absence of conceptions are, beyond any manner of doubt, absolutely things that cannot exist through any essence of their own: they are like a coil of rope you label with "snake."

The expression "reality" here refers to something that could exist through its own essence. "Conception" is the fact that things occur through the process of conceptualization.

क्टर. चट्यीर. श्रुट. तथा दुरु. श्रुया श्रु स्वाप्य प्राप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त प्राप्त स्वाप्त प्राप्त स्वाप्त स्

When this commentary states that "desire and such" are like a piece of rope labelled "snake," it is only giving a single example; what it means to say is that each and every other existing object is as well like a rope called a snake: they are all established through the process of conceptualization.

Here the colored pattern of the rope and the way it's coiled make it resemble a snake; and if you're in a place where you can't see it very clearly, then you start to think to yourself, "It's a snake!" The fact though is that there is nothing about the rope as a whole, nor anything about its various parts, that you could

ever establish as being one kind of a snake; the snake of the rope, then, is nothing but a creation of conceptions.

यित्रः वह्याः क्रीं द्वरः चरः ग्रीरः स्रोतः प्रत्याः प्रश्नाः प्रत्याः प्रश्नाः प्रत्याः स्रोतः प्रत्याः स्रोतः स्रोतः प्रत्याः प्रत्याः स्रोतः प्रत्याः प्रत्यः प्रत्याः प्रत्यः प्र

The same thing happens when you get the idea of "me" about the heaps, the various components to yourself. There is nothing about these components as a whole, when you consider them as a continuum in time, nor as a whole considered in a single moment in time, nor as the various parts to a whole, that you could ever establish as being any kind of "me." We'll go into this in more detail further on.

Because of this fact, and since moreover there is not the slightest thing outside of the parts or whole of the components to yourself that you could ever consider any kind of "me," this "me" is nothing more than a creation of conception, based on the components. There is no "me" which exists through any essence of its own.

Selection Five: What the Buddha really meant when He said that things were "mind only"

|भूरतेश्वरात्ताकार्योथ्यप्रधाशात्मा |ह्राक्षेत्रीयः श्वाक्षवाः भूरति । विश्वरा भूरत्वर। ।श्वरम्यात्वयायाश्वरात्मः श्वीयः थः यु। ।यारः श्वेयाः वयायाः त्वर्यः यः यु। तयः श्वरश्चा ।श्वरम्यात्वयायाश्वरात्मः श्वीयः युः यु। ।यारः श्वेयः व्यव्याव्यव्याव्यः व्यव्याः युः यः यु। ।भूष्यश्वरातः युष्यः याश्वरात्तायाश्वरात्तायः यह्याः हेषः युः युः युः याश्वराः श्वेयः श्वराः विश्वरः विश्वरः य

নাঝুৎমানী

Now the Sixty Verses on Reasoning says,

The world is something that ignorance causes; Why? For the Buddhas say it is so. And why then would it be wrong to say That this world is only conceptions. If one were to end his ignorance, Then how is it that the thing that's ended, Despite our misunderstanding, could never Disappear, even in conceptions?

यः त्या दे त्या क्षयः दुः वर्षे द्या क्षयः या व्या क्ष्या व्या व्या क्ष्या व्या क्ष्या व्या व्या व्या विका वर्षे देव व्या वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे व्या वर्षे वर

The meaning of the lines is as follows. If things existed in their very essence, then they would exist as some independent reality. If this were so, then when you finally stopped your mistaken states of mind, they would never disappear, although they should have.

स्वान्त्रीयाविक्त

The mind is the main thing; and to show this, the following explanation appears in the scripture:

The world, in the form of those who live in it, finds its very being through the power of the karma they have collected with their minds, and through the bad thoughts in their minds. All the vast multitude of worlds too, in the form of the places where these beings live, have been put there, have been produced, by the collective karma of these same beings, and no

one else—by the karma within their own minds. This refers to everything up to the farthest reaches of the world, from the great disc of wind that underpins our planet up to the highest temporary heaven, the one named "Below No Other."

12.ता.भ्र.ची.ता.भ्र्याभारतदेश्वर्त्ताता.भ्र्याभारत्ते। श्रेभश्चरत्ते। श्रेभशः वर्षः वर्षः

On this subject, the intricate patterns on a peacock and other such objects are produced by each one's personal karma. The intricacies of the petals and colors of a lotus flower and other such things are produced by the collective karma of living beings. You can apply these principles to all other cases as well.

हि. अन्ति । विष्या अध्ययः अध्ययः विषयः व

As the verse goes,

It's through the karma of living beings That the great dark mountains arise in their time. It's like the hells, and the heavens above, And swords, and jewels, and trees in the world.

The great books of the Mind-Only School also discuss whether the two worlds [of beings and the place they live] are produced by karma that is collective or not, and so it's not as though the system of the Mind Only denies the existence of the world where beings live.

And so it is spoken, that all the living beings of the universe are produced by karma. And if somehow you could stop all minds, then karma itself would cease to be, for it is only through mind and what comes along with it that karma can be collected. Therefore karma itself depends on the mind. So the statement from the *Sutra of the Ten Levels*, where it says that there is no great master of all things, and no great maker of all things, conveys one meaning of the word "only" in the expression "mind-only"; the point is that there is no other creator of things than the mind itself.

पर्चेयाःसङ्ग्रीः यायाः ये विश्वास्याः यो स्वास्याः यो स्वास्यः यो स्वास

It is stated in scripture as well that each and every one of the twelve links in the chain of interdependence depends on a single thing: the mind. These references convey yet another meaning of the word "only" in the expression "mind-only." Here the point is that mind is the main thing. The former scriptural references are putting their point in a negative way, and the latter references are putting their point in a positive way.

Thus we can see that it's the mind which is the one single principal cause that sets all life into motion. The principal cause is not something other than the mind. Therefore when the sutras speak of "mind only," they are making the point that mind is the main thing, and not matter. Although we do of course admit that physical matter exists, this matter is not the one prime creator of sentient beings in the way that mind is.

Therefore all these scriptural references are denying that the opposite of the mind, something other than the mind, could be the creator. They are not though saying that there are no outside physical objects at all.

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Six: How Emptiness Allows Karma to Work, According to the Middle-Way School

The following selections are from the *Overview of the Middle Way,* composed by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568).

त्रम्यर्ग्यर्थे स्वर्गा द्रम्यर्ग्य स्वर्गा द्रम्यर्ग्य स्वर्णा द्रम्यर्ग्य स्वर्ण्य स्वर्ण स्वर्ण्य स्वर्ण्य स्वर्ण स

Let us first consider enemy destroyers of the Listener or Self-Made Buddha type. Aren't you saying then that, like the non-Buddhists, they fail to eliminate all the widespread mental afflictions that operate in all three realms? Because isn't it true that they have failed to achieve the path which is directly incompatible, in the way it holds its object, with the root of all these afflictions; that is, the tendency to conceive of things as existing through some nature of their own? And this is true, for they lack that comprehensive knowledge where they realize that things have no nature of their own.

यादः चयाः सदः चित्रे द्वार्थः यादः चयाः व्याः च्याः चय

यद्गेत्रः यो स्तर्भः स्त्रः विकासः न्यायः यद्गेत्रः । विकास्या स्तरः स्त्रः स्त्

Consider these same enemy destroyers. It is true that they have not yet realized, entirely, the fact that the person has no self nature. This is because they have yet to perceive directly the fact that the person has no nature. This in itself is true as well, for they are still chained by total misperceptions, in such a way that they will never be able to root out the object that they think they see when they hold the parts to the person, the thing which gets the label of "me," as existing from its own side. And this too is true, for they lack that comprehensive knowledge where they realize that the parts to the person have no nature of their own.

यश्य । त्राक्षः नेतरः योक्षः वर्ष्यः ययः वर्ष्यः यदेः स्वाः यद्वाः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्षः

The first of our logical statements above is always true. For suppose that a person is still unable to root out the object that he thinks he sees when he holds the parts to the person, the thing which gets the label of "me," as existing through some nature of its own. As long as he goes on this way, then he will continue to find himself unable to root out the object that he thinks he sees when he holds the thing which gets the label, the "me," as existing from its own side. And as long as he continues with this, then by the power of this misperception he will continue to collect karma. And as long as he collects karma, then he will continue to spin around in this wheel of suffering life.

क्वार्यायाः यहेवः वर्षाः ने विदेशः स्त्रीयाः ने त्यः यहेवः वर्षाः यहेवः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्ष व्यार्थः त्यात्रः त्व्योत्यः क्योद्धाः वर्षाः व

यश्चित्रः प्रतिः श्चेत्रः त्रित्रः विद्याः स्त्रे त्रिः प्रतिः स्त्रः त्रिः त्रान्तः विद्याः स्त्रः त्रिः त्र स्वराधितः विद्याः प्रतिः स्वरः स

This then is the ultimate idea within the root text and the commentary of the *Higher Line*, [written by Maitreya and Asanga]:

Due to the mental seeds for the two kinds of tendencies to grasp to some selfnature, these two tendencies themselves spring up.

Due to the fact that they have sprung up, an impression with a wrong way of looking at things springs up, and some things seem as though they are pleasant from their own side, and other things seem as though they are unpleasant from their own side.

Due to the fact that this impression has sprung up, the emotion of liking springs up, where you focus on a pleasant object and don't want to lose it. And the emotion of disliking springs up, where you focus on an unpleasant object and want to avoid it.

This then forces you to collect karma.

And karma forces you to spin around in the wheel of suffering life.

And this is why the Buddhas have said that this suffering life is something forced on us because we have not been able to see, directly, the essence of the Ones Gone Thus [that is, emptiness].

ज। क्'र्योट.क्याविया.में.क्रैट.चयु.ला.रेयाना.ग्री.भ्राया.पुना.रटा। चन्ना.रेयु.वट.री.से. क्'उचचर्यीट.ज.ला.रेयाना.क्या.स्या.स्या.स्या.स्याना.ग्री.भ्रायना.ग्री.भ्रायना.श्री.भवना.श्री.ना

त्तर्यह्मायर सूर प्रदेश प्राप्त स्वर्य स्वयं स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयं स्वर्य स्वयं स्वर्य स्वयं स्वयं

Here we will analyze the statement [from *Entering the Middle Way*, by Master Chandrakirti (650 AD)] where it says, "...The mind of a craving spirit as well, which sees a stream of water as pus." One may begin with the following question:

Let's consider the objects of the following states of mind: the visual consciousness of a craving spirit where a river of water looks like pus and blood; the visual consciousness of a person with a kind of cataract where a clean white porcelain basin looks like a hair has fallen into it; and that kind of meditation where you visualize skeletons—where you imagine that the entire surface of the earth is covered with the bones of corpses. Are all these objects completely equivalent, as far as being something that exists or doesn't exist?

निष्यायत्त्रप्तिः स्वत्रास्त्रप्तिः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्व स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वत्याः स्व

In reply we will first set forth a relevant passage, and then we will explicate the passage. Here is the first. The text called *The Abbreviation of the Greater Way* says,

Insofar as craving spirits, animals, Humans, and pleasure beings, each according To their class, have differing perceptions Of a single thing, we say it has no reality.

Asvabhava, the venered layman with lifetime vows, has explained the passage. His words include the following:

गुराद्वा विवाल स्वाराय स्वारा

When they look at *a single thing*, a stream of water, each one sees what the ripening of his particular karma forces him to see. A *craving spirit* sees the river full of pus and blood and the like.

An *animal* or such, on the other hand, thinks of this same water as a place to stay, and makes his home there.

दर्शन्त्रा विकान्ने स्ट्रान्त्रा विकान्ने स्ट्रान्त्र स्ट्रान्त्य स्ट्रान्त्र स्ट्रान्त्य स्ट्रान्त्र स्ट्रान्त्र स्ट्रान्त्र स्ट्रान्त्र स्ट्रान्त्र स्ट

Humans look at the same thing and perceive it as water—sweet, clear, and cool. They drink of it, they wash themselves with it, and they swim in it.

> Those pleasure beings who are wrapped in deep meditation at the level we call the "realm of limitless space" see the water as empty space, for their ability to conceptualize physical matter has dissolved altogether.

गुरुषःयःसुरःयःदिरःयाषुष्ठाःयथा याव्यःसुयाषःदयाया । १८८ःसुयाषःयवया

Here secondly we will explain the meaning of the text we quoted first. We proceed in three steps: disproving the position of others, establishing our own position, and then refuting their rebuttal. Here is the first.

र्ह्स्य प्राप्त अक्रमान्य स्वाप्त स्य स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

Someone may make the following claim:

Given the statements that have come above, the fact is that we should never again consider anything as being one way or the other.

Well then, you must be suggesting that the system of the Buddha is all the same as the system of every non-Buddhist belief, that there is no difference in their correctness at all. And you must be saying too that we could never state that our Teacher was the highest teacher, and that the teachers of the non-Buddhists are lesser.

यशिरश्रातपुः ह्वीरा त्याश्राणी । वुः श्रेट. वुः वाण्चिट. कुट. वुः । श्रिवः श्रेः श्राः श्राः विष्यः । । श्रिवः श्रेः व्याः विष्यः श्रेः व्याः । । श्रेष्यः याः याव्यः श्रेः व्याः । । श्रिवः व्याः श्रेष्यः याः याव्यः श्रेष्यः याव्यः याव्यः श्रेष्यः याव्यः श्रेष्यः याव्यः श्रेष्यः याव्यः श्रेष्यः यावः याव्यः श्रेष्यः याव्यः य

And you must be suggesting all this, for you have claimed that we should never again consider anything as being one way or the other.

Now if you should agree that none of the differences mentioned above exist, we must reply that they do, for as the verse says:

All other teachers now I've given up, And go for refuge now to only You; Why? Because it's You alone who has No fault, and perfected every good.

लट्राय.श्रम विदेश बिट्रयोग्नेर.य.के.स्र्र.त.योट.जा से.श्र.ला.चेयाश्रम.

Someone else might make the following claim:

Suppose a pleasure being, a human, and a craving spirit sit down together and look at a glass filled with water: the thing that we define as "wet and flowing." Since to the perceptions of each different type of being it is real, the glass full of wet and flowing water is in reality pus and blood to the eyes of the craving spirit, and in reality water to the eyes of the human, and in reality ambrosia to the eyes of the pleasure being.

वश्वराद्धः व्यान्त्रात्वाश्वराद्धः द्वीरा यद्वित्यः यद्वः व्यान्त्रात्वाश्वराद्धः द्वेदः श्वराद्धः व्यान्त्रात्वाश्वराद्धः द्वः श्वराद्धः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्तः व्यान्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्त

We ask you then a question: in the situation you've just described, is it that the visual consciousness of all three beings are a valid perception, or is it that only one or two of them are a valid perception? Suppose you say all three are valid. Well then, the glass of wet and flowing water must be full of something that is all three different things: pus and blood, and each of the others. And then too it must be possible for there to be multiple and yet still valid perceptions which see one thing in two completely incompatible ways. And finally there must be such a thing as a valid perception which correctly perceives that the glass is filled with something which is simultaneously water and yet not water. Why so? Because, according to your view, the three

differing cases of visual consciousness possessed by the three different beings would all have to be valid perception.

लुर्न् न्युर्न् । कु.लुर्यं श्रुर्यात्र्यां क्रियां विचा त्यां श्रुं वार्यं स्थित् । विचा विचा त्यां स्था विचा त्यां त्यां

And if you try to agree to these absurdities, you are wrong, for the quality of being pus and blood is incompatible with the quality of being either one of the other two substances mentioned. Moreover, the quality of being water and the quality of not being water are directly incompatible in such a way that, if something exists and lacks one of these qualities, it must then possess the other.

हैं स्वाका की अद्भारत का स्वाक्ष की विकास की स्वाक्ष क

Someone may answer with the following claim:

In the case mentioned, the visual consciousness of the human is a valid perception, but the visual consciousnesses of the other two types of beings are not valid perception. These latter two see something like the pus and blood, and the ambrosia, only because their karma (which is good in one case, and bad in the other) forces them to.

श्राभेद्रासीया विश्वास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्र विश्वास्त्रास्

Well then, according to you, the visual consciousness of the human wouldn't be valid perception either. Because isn't it true that the human sees the water only because his karma (which in this case is halfway between the good and the bad just mentioned) forces him to? Moreover, aren't you implying then that there is no such thing as a valid tactile consciousness, or a valid auditory consciousness, in the mental stream of any being who is not a human? Because aren't you saying that there's no such thing as a valid visual consciousness in the mental stream of any such being? Certainly you are, for you believe your original position to be correct. And suppose now that you do agree that such beings can have no such valid consciousnesses.

यर्चानानेश्वान्तेश्वान्यान्तेश्वान्तेश्वान्तेश्वान्तेश्वान्तेश्वान्तेश्वान्तेश्वान्ते

Aren't you then implying that these beings never have any case where they are able to reach a definite conclusion about something, or to analyze an object? And if so, aren't you implying that there could never be a case where one of these beings could recognize another? Of course you are, given your position.

यश्चिमः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः विद्यान्तः त्यान्तः त्यान्तः त्यान्तः त्यान्तः त्यान्तः त्यान्तः त्यान्त यान्तः त्रिक्षः स्वरं त्याक्ष्यः विद्यान्तः त्यान्तः त्यान्यः त्यान्यः

Here secondly is the section where we establish our own position. Now suppose three different types of beings—a pleasure being, a human, and a craving spirit, each with their own karma—sit down together and look upon a glass filled with water, the thing we define as "wet and flowing." The glass of water is not at this point one thing which is simultaneously three different objects. Neither is it necessary in this situation for there to be three identical valid perceptions. And when the glass full of wet and flowing water occurs, it occurs with three different, distinct parts to it.

न्या विषया विषया

It is not though the case that, from the time it first started, the glass of water came with the three different parts, or that they stay with the glass of water until it eventually ends. What happens is that one of the parts of the glass filled with wet and flowing water provides a material cause, and the karma of the craving spirit provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being blood and pus.

Another part of the glass of water again provides a material cause, and the karma of the human provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being water.

स्तर्यते स्त्रीम्। देवे कः विश्वाचीश्राक्षेत्र स्त्रेत्वा स्त्रेत्व स्त्रेत

Yet another part of the glass of water provides a material cause, and the karma of the pleasure being provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being ambrosia, and so on.

र्वतः वीक्षः स्वाधियाः प्रश्नाताः तर्द्याः त्राचालयः वीक्षः यात्रः वीक्षः यात्रः वीक्षः यात्रः वीक्षः यात्रः व

At this point, the glass full of wet and flowing water is something with three different parts. Nonetheless, it is not the case that all three different beings see all three parts. The craving spirit is forced by the bad karma he has collected to see the glass of water as pus and blood; and he doesn't see the other two things. One should understand that a similar case holds with the latter two types of beings.

What we just described as happening is only with reference to where a glass of something wet and flowing is an object shared by the three different beings, as they look at it together. When the craving spirit himself though picks up the glass in his hand and begins to partake of its contents, the glass of liquid is no longer something that exists with three different parts. Since at this point it is something that the craving spirit is experiencing exclusively, its continuation starts being pus and blood.

चीः कुः नृत्याः वित्तावर्षायाः न्याः स्वत्याः व्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वतः स

How the glass of liquid exists originally all depends on the particular outer world from where it has been taken, for each of the three different beings has a different outer world, depending on the specific karma he himself has collected. If the glass of liquid were sweet, cool water taken from the world

of humans—a world created by the specific karma of the human in the group—then that would be its original condition, and so on.

हुर।

When we say that a craving spirit looks at a stream of water and sees pus and blood, by the way, we are only talking about some kinds of craving spirits, and not all of them. This is because there are many kinds of craving spirits: some with obstacles in the world around them that prevent them from relieving their craving; some with obstacles that are parts of their bodies; and some with obstacles that relate to the food or drink itself.

यन्त्रवः लिट्टा विक्रा त्या प्रश्ने त्या प्राप्त त्या त्या व्यवस्था विक्रा विक्रा

There is, moreover, an example we can use for how, when the three different types of beings with their three karmas look all together at a glass full of something wet and flowing, there start to be three different objects, each confirmed by a valid perception. Suppose there is a ball of red-hot steel; one piece of this ball provides the material cause, and the "mantra of steel" provides a contributing factor. Due to these two, a person who has used the mantra of steel on his hand can touch the ball, but he doesn't undergo any sensation of heat; instead, he feels some other sensation. A person who has not used the mantra on his hand touches the ball and does feel a sensation of heat, and no other kind of sensation.

हुर। दुर्तिं अरुक्षर्भे श्री हुँ ट्वैर मुँदिर प्रदेश्या प्रत्ये प्रत

Another example would be the moon in springtime; one part of the feel of its rays on the body provides the material cause, and then the karma of a craving spirit provides a contributing factor. Based on these two, the spirit gets a sensation of heat, which is experienced by the consciousness of the body.

So too with the wintertime sun; one part of the feel of its rays on the body provides the material cause, and then the karma of the craving spirit provides a contributing factor. Based on these two, the spirit gets a sensation of cold, which is experienced by the consciousness of the body.

निस्य मुन्या क्षेत्र हो। यविष्य मुन्या विष्य यासुर स्ययाय स्यय या स्यापि द्वार स्थापि । विष्य या स्यापि स्थापि । यविष्य मुन्या स्थापि । विष्य यासुर स्थापि । स्थापि । स्थापि । स्थापि । स्थापि । स्थाप

It is a fact that they get this kind of sensation, for [Arya Nagarjuna's] *Letter to a Friend* states:

For craving spirits, even the light of the moon In the spring is hot, and even the winter sun cold.

यः लटा स्रेट्रा स्ट्रा स्ट्रा के स्राये स्ट्रा स्ट

All of this is caused by the extraordinary circumstances of the particular time and place, for generally speaking it never happens this way: there is nothing at all about the sun that can feel cold, and nothing about the moon that can

feel hot. This too is a fact, for there does not exist on the sun any case of that substance we call "covered space."

यश्चियान्। स्वास्त्रीत्त्राः विद्याः विद्याः

Here is the third part of our presentation, where we refute the rebuttal of representatives of other views. You will recall that our own position is describing a situation where beings of three different types, each with their own karma, are sitting together and looking at a glass filled with something that is wet and flowing. The glass filled with something wet and flowing exists, at this point, as something with three distinct parts. Nonetheless, no one of the beings is able to see all three things there, for they are each at the mercy of the particular karma that they themselves have collected. Representatives of other viewpoints now come to attack this position.

One comes and makes the following claim:

Your position, as just explained, is mistaken, for it goes against a statement of the glorious Dharmakirti. This is quite surely the case, for in his major work [entitled *The Commentary on Valid Perception*] he says,

Suppose you say that they don't see it, And circumstances cause another form.

What he's talking about here is a belief of the [non-Buddhist] Numerist School. They give the case of a single person whose physical form is looked upon at the same time by his enemy, and also by his friend. In reality, the person's physical form is both attractive and ugly at the same time. Something happens where yet another physical form, one from karma, grows up between the person's true physical form and the enemy and friend looking at it. Because of this neither the enemy nor the friend sees both the attractiveness and the ugliness together.

Master Dharmakirti uses logic to refute this concept, and this same logic can be used against the position you have taken, to prove that you are wrong.

देशितव्यत्तात्रा देश्वर वर्षेत्र वर्येत्र वर्ये

Your reasoning here is though incorrect, for the belief you have expressed shows that you have failed to understand both the meaning of Master Dharmakirti's statement, and the whole position expressed above.

यर क्रैट शु.क्रैट यह्या तालु श्रेष्ठी। या वैया श्रिष्ठी क्रिया तालु र स्थित स

प्रश्चित्रप्रेर।

प्रश्चित्रप्रेर।

प्रश्चित्रप्रस्ति।

This is a fact, for the actual meaning of Master Dharmakirti's statement is as follows. The Numerist School is describing a situation where you are looking at a physical form either from far away, or from up close. They say that, depending on the distance between you and the object, another physical form which is the result of karma, and which stands between your visual consciousness and the original form, is either clear or not. This then determines whether the original form appears to you distinctly or not. It is not the case though, they say, that what determines whether the original form appears clearly or not is whether or not you have a clear impression of this form.

In reply then Master Dharmakirti is asking the Numerists:

Let's consider these two cases of some intermediate physical form that comes from karma. Do they, or do they not, function to obscure the two original forms, the one at a distance, and the other close by? If they were to obscure them, then your visual consciousness could never see the two original forms, since they would have been obscured by the others.

यदः र्रेन त्राचे भूपा विभाने भाषा वा ने भाष

And suppose you say that they do not obscure them. Wouldn't your visual consciousness then see both the two intermediate forms created by karma, and the two original forms, the near one and the far one, all at the same time? They would have to because, according to you, the intermediate forms do not obscure the original ones.

This is the real point of the Master's statement, wherein he refutes that belief of the Numerists.

Our second point [that you have failed to comprehend the position we expressed above] is also quite true. Our original position was describing a situation where three different kinds of beings were sitting together and looking at a glass full of something wet and flowing. It is not our position that the glass full of something wet and flowing is one thing that is three different things. And it is not our position that there is such a thing as the physical appearance of a person which is at once both attractive and ugly.

It is furthermore not our position that the blood and pus represent some kind of physical form which results from karma and grows up between the visual consciousness of the craving spirit and the stream of water. And it is not our position that the craving spirit's eyes see both this blood and pus as some kind of physical form resulting from karma, and the river of water at the same time. It is our position that, by force of his karma, the craving spirit is not able to see the stream of water.

रुद्धः दर्भः दर्यमः श्रीः वम् अस्ति वम् स्ति । स्ति स्ति । स्ति स्ति । स्ति ।

यश्चितः स्वार्याक्षः स्वार्वाक्षः स्वार्वाकः स्वर्वाकः स्वार्वाकः स्वार्वाकः स्वार्वाकः स्वरंविकः स्वार्वाकः स्वरंवाकः स्वरंवाकः स्वरंवाविकः स्वरंवाविकः स्वरंविकः स्वरंविकः स्वरंविकः स्वरंविकः स्वरंविकः स्वरंविकः स्वरंविकः स्वरंविकः स्वरंविक

And anyway, maybe it's you who have contradicted a statement of the glorious Dharmakirti. You have taken the position that the five sicknesses, and the five elements, and the five demons are all the direct result of the five poisons—the five bad thoughts. But when the non-Buddhists take the position that phlegm and desire have a cause-and-effect relationship, and that bile and anger have the same kind of relationship, and so on, then Master Dharmakirti refutes them by showing that desire doesn't always come and go according to the phlegm, and anger doesn't always come and go according to the bile. To do so he makes the statement that says, "It's not a fact that wind and the rest are such, for the relationship doesn't always hold." We could twist around this statement too and say that it disproved your position; and add as well how wrong it is to assert that uncreated space could ever be the direct result of jealousy.

[The point seems to be that, although your position about the bad thoughts, and our original position on the nature of the three beings' perceptions, are both correct, you could always twist around some quotation by a master, take it out of context or misinterpret it, and try to show they were wrong.]

Someone else might come and make yet another claim:

Let's talk about that quotation above, where it said:

Insofar as [these different beings] have differing perceptions
Of a single thing, we say it has no reality.

The idea being expressed here is that a single object can be appearing in three different ways. This is incorrect because, according to you, what's happening is that three different objects are appearing in three different ways. And this certainly is your position; remember, you were describing a situation where three different kinds of beings sit down together and look at a glass full of something that's wet and flowing. You said that there were three different objects, each confirmed by a valid perception, and that they were appearing in three different ways.

श्चा श्रुषानुःवारुवाःवोश्चायाश्चायः यात्रः विश्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वय

Well now, suppose a person is using all four of his limbs, and his head, to perform five different actions. According to you, it wouldn't be one person performing five different actions, because five different protuberances of his body are performing five different actions.

देशःचःचःचश्रस्यःश्चेश्वःचःदेशःचःचश्वःयरःवह्यःद्वःच्येशःयदःदेदःकःवशःधेरः। बेरःव। चुश्रःयःवःविश्वःयशःश्चेशःचःदेशःचःचःचश्वःयरःवह्यःद्वःच्येशःयदःदेदःकःवशःधेरःयशः

In response to this line of reasoning, someone responds:

No, there's no such problem here. The five protuberances are all parts of the one person, so we have to say that, when the five are performing some actions, the person is performing some actions.

यह्मान्तर्भेत्र।

यह्मान्तर्भेत्र।

यह्मान्तर्भेत्रम्भवेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भवेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भवेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भवेत्रम्भवेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भवेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भवेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भवेत्रम्भेत्यम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्रम्भेत्

Well the case above is exactly the same! The three things mentioned, the blood and pus and the other two, are all parts of the glass full of something wet and flowing. When the three appear then we can say that the glass full of a thing which is wet and flowing is acting as a basis, and that three different ways of appearing are being displayed upon it.

श्री स्थान्या विकास्या स्थान्या स्याप स्थान्या स्थान्या स्थान्या स्थान्या स्थान्या स्थान्या स्थान्य स्थान्य

Someone else may come now and make yet another argument:

Let's talk about these three things: the pus and blood, and the other two. Are you implying then that these are not types of objects which would block each other from entering the space that each one occupies? After all, you were talking about a situation where those three types of beings, each with their own karma, sit down together and look at a glass full of water. And you said that your position was that it was possible for there to be three different objects there, each one confirmed by a valid perception.

यश्रिमाश्चीःयिष्ठभाष्यम् र्द्ध्वार्यो स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्

লেন্দ্রেশ্য স্থান্দ্র ক্রেম্

This kind of reasoning, where you attempt to show that we are implying that the three objects are not the kinds that block each other from entering the space that each one occupies, cannot disprove our position. It is not our belief that in this situation the glass full of something which is wet and flowing is one thing which is three different things. Neither did we ever say that there definitely had to be identical valid perceptions here.

Someone might make the following claim:

In his *Commentary to the Twenty Verses*, Master Vinitadeva makes this statement—

If there was not a single drop of pus there, then how could there ever be a whole river of pus? They are forced to see it, through the ripening of their karma.

According to you, this statement would have to be mistaken, because when the three different kinds of beings sit down together and look at the glass full of something wet and flowing, the visual consciousness of the craving spirit is a valid perception, and the pus is real pus.

मुँद्र-भेर-री रे.क्षे.वंदुः तम्यायत्र है.क्षेर-क्षेत्र-क्षेत्र-क्षेत्र-स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र मुँद्र-भेर-री रे.क्षे.वंदुः तम्याय्य स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त् र्त्त-र-तर्व-स्थानाक्ष्यकान्यविष्णः श्रीक्षाक्षाः वर्षे न्यान्यक्षाः वर्षे न्यान्यक्षे न्यान्यक्यक्षे न्यान्यक्षे न्यान्यक्षे न्यान्यक्षे न्यान्यक्षे न्यान्यक्षे

And yet there is no such problem. No matter how many arguments of this kind you want to present, they are all made from the point of view of denying the existence of external objects. The way these arguments go is as follows. If the color blue were to exist as an external object, then the following would occur when this color appeared directly to a sense perception grasping blue; that is, with such a perception found in the mental stream of one of those who "only sees this side" [which is another name for those who have not yet perceived emptiness directly].

When an earlier instance of the perception of blue ends, what actually happens is that it plants a mental seed which eventually grows into a later instance of the same perception of blue, when the seed ripens. Suppose the blue were not just this kind of appearance, but rather an appearance where blue as an outer object were transmitting a likeness of itself and thereby appearing to one's perceptions. Something else then would be happening when the three different beings sit down together and look at the glass full of something wet and flowing. The three different objects would be appearing to them because each of the objects was transmitting a likeness of itself to their perception. All of this would be happening independent of any process where each being's karma planted a mental seed, which later ripened and produced the appearance of the object.

द्याःक्याश्चात्वयाः स्त्रीतः याशुः सायः यहेतः त्रशा द्रशायः याशुः याश्वात्यः याश्यात्यः याश्यात्यः याश्यात्यः य

विषायगायाः प्रदेश देश प्रायाश्चर्यायाः ह्रेया वार्यायाः प्रवेश प्रायाः विषायाः विष्यायः विष्यायः विष्यायः विषय विषयः वारा च्या चारा च्या चारा

If this were how the three objects were appearing, then they would not be appearing through a process where the specific and different karma that each of the three beings had collected had planted a seed in their mind which later ripened. As such each of the beings involved would have to be perceiving all three of the objects, whereas the fact is that they do not.

All this is an argument attempting to refute those who refuse to accept the denial of outer objects.

र्श्यकाश्राहर्र् हिंद्राण्ट्री थी. येवाकायाहि स्ट्रम् स्ट्रम् श्री हिंद्र्या हे स्वामी स्वाम्य स्वामी स्वा

The real meaning of the quotation by Master Vinitadeva is therefore the following:

Suppose there didn't exist a single drop of pus that existed as it appeared to exist to the craving spirit; that is, which existed as an outer object. How then could there exist a whole river full of pus which existed as an outer object? These beings do though see the pus and so on, for they are forced to do so by their karma.

देशः विश्वा देशः विषान् विषान् विषान् विषान् विष्टा विष्ट्रा विष्

And this is certainly the case, for later on in the text someone argues that, if the pus and blood did not exist as outer objects, and if they were only a part of the mind itself, then they could never provide the function of being something to eat or drink. And in response, Master Vinitadeva says "Actions and their objects are like an injury in a dream." He is saying that, even though the pus and blood do not exist as outer objects, nonetheless they can perform the function of being something to eat or drink. He proves his point by using a great many examples, such as a dream.

दे. संराधान कर स्ता विका मार्थे स्थान प्रति स्थान स्थान प्रति स्थान स्य

If this were not the case, then one would have to say that form and other such doorways through which perceptions grow do not even exist at all. Why? Because you would be saying that all the sutras which state that they exist are sutras which do not mean what they say; sutras which you have to interpret to understand their true meaning. And this too is certainly the case, for the autocommentary to the *Twenty Verses* states that:

In the same way, statements by the victorious Buddha where He says that form and other such doors of perception do exist would be examples of His word that must be interpreted to establish their real meaning; statements that are only spoken figuratively, for the benefit of disciples who might require such explanations.

व्रवायायावित्यायाः अर्थे स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वर

In response to this someone might claim:

There's no problem; the point of this statement is to say that sutras which explain form and similar doors of perception as actually existing as outer objects are only spoken figuratively, and must be interpreted to establish their true meaning.

Well then, the meaning of the original statement then is just the same: it is saying that "there does not exist even a drop of pus and blood which exists as an outer object."

यायकातात्माक्त्र्यं विद्यायोक्ष्यं विद्यायोक्षयं विद्याये विद्याये

Yet again, another argument might be made:

Let's take the case of one of those craving spirits that looks at a river of water, and sees it as a dry riverbed, genuinely so. Or consider one that looks at a tree loaded with fruit, but sees it as nothing but bare limbs, genuinely so. The visual consciousness of both of these beings then must be a valid perception. Why? Remember the case of the three different beings looking at a glass full of something wet and flowing; according to you, the pus and blood was actual pus and blood, and the perception of them by the craving spirit was genuine: his visual consciousness was a valid perception.

चर्यात्रिम्। दर्योत्तायरक्षेत्र प्रत्यत्यात्रात्यात्र स्थात्य स्थात्य

Just because we said that about the other case doesn't mean that it's true in every case. If the craving spirit hadn't seen any water in that area in the first place, it wouldn't have made any sense for him to go over in that direction to try to enjoy some of the water. Therefore what happened was that, at first, he saw some water. Later on, he was forced by his karma to stop seeing water and saw only bare, parched earth. Then he had an impression where he thought the water had dried up.

The case with the fruit tree is the same. Although at first the craving spirit sees a tree loaded with fruit, later on his karma forces him to stop seeing fruit, and all he sees is bare branches. Then he has an impression where he thinks that the tree has no fruit any more.

श्रम् स्वा व्यायिक्यम्भ्याः भ्रम्याः भ्रम्यः भ्रम्

When all this is happening, the obstacle in the visual consciousness of the craving spirit prevents him from seeing the river of water, and so he sees a dry, parched riverbed. The same is true for the visual consciousness of a human: if the obstacle were there, it would prevent him from seeing the river of water, and then he would have to see a dry, parched riverbed.

क्र.री.चर्डेश्व.ता.रेषु.क्र्.थे। जन्नाजी,रेचर.चीन्नाक्ष्योन्नारेष्यान्नार्थ्यान्नार्थः क्ष्यां वर्ष्याच्यान्नात्त्र्याः वर्ष्याच्यान्नात्त्र्याः वर्ष्याच्यान्नात्त्र्याः वर्ष्याः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्षाः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्यः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्यः वर्षः वर्षः वरः व

याशुक्रान्डेया उर पुंचाय विवार्थे प्राये ध्रीर।

From one point of view, the river of water hasn't dried up when the craving spirit looks at it; but there *is* a river which has dried up, if you're talking about a river of water *that the spirit can see*, or a river of water *that the spirit can drink from*. This follows because when the three different types of beings sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing, it is true that, due to the force of karma, three different kinds of objects exist there at the same time: the pus and blood, and the other two.

Given all this, consider craving spirits that have obstacles that relate to their food and drink itself. The food and drink there really *is* food and drink, until such time as the spirit starts trying to eat or drink it. When he does try to do so, then the continuum of the food into the next moment starts becoming pus and blood. It is not though that it is the simple appearance of something as pus and blood that could ever function as something to eat or drink. If this were the case, then the rules of karma and its consequences would have to be less that what they really are. And this is true, for if a craving spirit like this ever existed it would represent a failure of the laws of karma and its consequences.

त्रीत्र मुन्न स्वास्त्र विकास स्वास्त्र स्वास

विया मृ खूर वरे खूर व र्अं श्रीका व वर व मृर वी ग्रु व ग्री मुका परे ही र

Suppose moreover that there were no pus and blood out there to appear as the pus and blood, and suppose that the mere appearance of something looking like pus and blood could ever function as something to eat or drink. Well then, you would also have to be able to use a comb on the hair that appears on a porcelain sink to a person with cataracts. And a horsefly that appeared to the same person would have to be able to give him a bite. And the water of a mirage would have to provide all the normal functions of water, and so on. Why so? Well because, according to you, there is no pus and blood out there to appear as pus and blood; according to you, the mere appearance of something looking like pus and blood can provide all the functions of things that you eat and drink.

पदः स्त्रीम्।

स्राच्यास्त्रम् स्त्रम् स्त्रम्यस्त्रम् स्त्रम् स्त्रम् स्त्रम् स्त्रम् स्त्रम्यस्त्रम्यस्त्रम्यस्त्रम्यस्त्रम

And consider again this case where a pleasure being and a human and a craving spirit and an animal or the like all sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing. According to you, it would have to be genuine when something that just looked like ambrosia appeared to the pleasure being, and it would have to be genuine when something that just looked like pus and blood appeared to the craving spirit, but there couldn't be any pus and blood out there to appear as pus and blood. And if this were the case, then consider the visual consciousness of a being in the hells. It would then have to be a valid perception towards something appearing to it that just looked like the burning steel of the hells, and towards something that just looked like a mass of fire, and so on. Finally, this person would not have any valid

perceptions at all towards any of these things as actual objects. Why would this all have to be so? If your idea were correct, it would have to be, for the logic here is identical to your own.

यावकात्ताः अर्थान्यः अर्थान्यः अर्थान्यः विक्रान्यः वि

And suppose you agree that this hell being could have no valid perceptions of the type we mentioned. Well then, the burning steel and other objects could never perform any real actions: they could never burn the bodies of the people born there, they could never chop them up, and so on. Why? Well because of what you just agreed to. And suppose you agree to this; that they could never perform any real actions. Well then, the torment of the hells itself then must not even exist, by your own admission. And remember too that case where the beings all sit down and look at the same thing. You must be saying then that the actual water, the thing towards which the visual consciousness of the human is a valid perception, doesn't exist at all. Why? Well because, according to you, no actual pus and blood exists either in the same situation.

र्ट्याम्बर्ग्य नेत्रक्ष्यकारावक्ष्यायाध्येत्त्री क्ष्यास्यक्ष्यायाव्यक्ष्यायाध्येत्र। व्यास्य स्वास्य स्वास्य

Someone might now make the following claim:

In this situation, there *does* exist some real water there. This is because the human can confirm the water with his own experience, as it performs all the functions of water—as he uses it to wash himself, or as he uses it to cook something.

Well then, in the same situation there must exist some real pus and blood there as well, because in this same situation the craving spirit can confirm the pus and blood with his own experience as they perform their functions—as he drinks them, and then as the sizzle in his throat and stomach, and so on.

यश्चर्ति देश्चर्या क्षेत्रक्ष्या क्षेत्रक्ष्य क्षेत्रक्षेत्य क्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्यक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रक्

Someone may respond to this argument with the following claim:

The two cases are not the same. When all this happens to the craving spirit, it's nothing more than his own imagination.

Well then, what happens to the human can't be happening to him either, because it's nothing more than *his* imagination.

Someone may respond to this with another claim:

When the human washes himself with the water and so on, it must not be something real, because it's nothing more than his own imagination.

Are you saying then that when the pus and blood sizzle in the stomach of the craving spirit, and so on, it can't be something real? For that too is nothing more than his own imagination. You agree? Well then, the suffering of craving spirits must not exist at all.

Someone might make the following claim:

Isn't it true that when all those beings sit down together and look at something, there isn't any actual pus and blood at all? Because isn't it true first of all that, when a person with cataracts looks into a porcelain basin, there is no strand of hair in the basin at all? And, secondly, doesn't [Master Dharmakirti's] text itself say,

Identical to the case of someone where his sense power has a cataract,

Is the mind of a craving spirit as well, which sees a stream of water as pus.

And yet there is no such problem, for this quotation appears in the section where we are examining the question of whether, in the schools of the Middle Way and the Mind-Only, an object and the perception of it must be equivalent in either both existing or both not existing. Moreover, there is another fact about this situation, where the stream of water appears as pus and blood to the visual consciousness of the craving spirit. It is no inconsistency to say that the visual consciousness that sees things this way is not a valid perception, and to say at the same time that—when the craving spirit looks at the stream of water—there does exist there actual pus and blood.

त्राचाश्चरम् । विश्वाचाश्वरम् तद्वः द्वेर । च्चरः विश्वाचाश्वरम् । विश्वाचाश्वरम् । विश्वाचाश्वरम् । विश्वाचाश्वरम् । च्याच्चरम् । च्याचरम् । च्याच्चरम् । च्याच्चरम् । च्याच्चरम् । च्याच्चरम् । च्याच्यरम् । च्याच्यरम्यययः । च्याच्यरम् । च्याच्यरम् । च्याच्यरम् । च्याच्यययः । च्याच्ययः । च्याच्ययः । च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः । च्याच्ययः । च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः । च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः । च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः । च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः । च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याचयः च्याच्ययः च्याचयः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्याच्ययः च्या

Someone again may come and claim the following:

Let's consider once more this situation where three different types of beings sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing. Isn't it true that there is no actual pus and blood there? Because isn't it true that the burning steel and so on in the hells is only something that appears to a person who is born there, but that there is nothing there which actually is these objects? Because isn't it true that there is no one at all who went and made all these kinds of things? And isn't this a fact, because doesn't the text of *The Bodhisattva's Way of Life* say:

Who made the burning steel that acts As the floor of the world of hell? Where did all the mass of flames You find there all come from?

The Able Ones have spoken that Everything there like this Is nothing at all other than The mind of what's non-virtue.

मुक्षः स्वेदः निर्वे देवः द्वान्यः स्वेनाः वाक्षः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्र स्वेतः स्वेदः निर्वे देवः द्वान्यः स्वेनाः वाक्षः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः स्वेतः यात्रः यात्रः स्वेनाः या

श्रेश्रशाचुरायार्थेरावश्रुश्यवीश्रीरा

Yet there is no such problem. The point of this quotation is to say that the burning steel and so on are not something that was created by some unchanging creator being or something like that; by someone who thought it over first and then created them. The lines are meant to show us that what really made all these things is the non-virtuous states of mind had by the beings who have to take birth there.

याने तबर तह हीर।

याने तह हीर।

याने तबर तह हीर।

याने तबर तह हीर।

याने तह हीर।

याने

If this were not the case, then consider those holy people who lead their lives following the ten virtues, and who are then born into the higher realms, and then experience the pleasures of these realms. And consider too those miserable people who lead their lives following the ten non-virtues, and who are then born into the lower realms, and then experience the sufferings of these realms. Is the difference between them just that they are having some better or worse kind of misperception, and not whether they are experiencing pleasure or pain? This would have to be the case, if your reasoning were correct.

यर्द्रिया अर्थ्यक्ष्याणुविदेवाद्या दक्ष्याच्यात्र्यात्र्या अर्थ्यक्षया वर्द्र

Suppose you agree that it is only a matter of better or worse misperceptions. Are you saying then that the pleasures of the higher realms don't even exist, and that the pains of the lower realms don't even exist? You must be, if you agree this way.

देशः व। यशः उवः ग्रीः वर्षे वः पार्श्वशः ग्रीशः प्रस्तवः विदः प्रविदः प्रायिदः पः प्रायः याः श्रेषाः उदः दुः प्रसूश्वः पः देवेः क्षें। क्षं दः श्रक्षं दशः देशः प्रदः दर्षोश्वः पः श्रः यो वः दर्षे श्रः व। स्र-प्राच-स्रि-त्य्राक्ष-प्राच-स्याक्ष्यक्ष-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्राच-स्रि-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्राच-स्याक्ष-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्रचाव-स्याक्ष-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्रचाव-स्याक्ष-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्रचाव-स्याक्ष-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्रचाव-स्याक्ष-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्रचाव-स्याक्ष-प्रते क्रिक्ष-प्रचाव-स्याक्ष-प्रवे क्रिक्ष-प्रचाव-स्याक्ष-स्याक्य-स्याक्ष-स्याक्य-स्याक्ष-स्याक्ष-स्याक्ष-स्याक्य-स्याक्ष-स्याक्ष-स्याक्य-स्याक्य-स्याक

In conclusion now, let us consider again these three kinds of beings, each with their different karma, as they sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing. It's not necessarily true that they must all have valid perceptions which are identical. If they did, then the three beings looking at the glass of water would have to think of the water as a place to live, in the way that a creature living in water would. The three beings as well would have to see the water in the same way that microscopic organisms living in the water, little beings imperceptible to normal visual consciousness, see it with their own visual consciousness. Then too the visual consciousness of microscopic organisms living in the depths of the ocean would have to be a valid perception towards the entire extent of the sea. And certain kinds of near-gods too would have to see weapons as glasses of water, and on and on; the problems raised would be many.

Again consider this same situation. Even though it is not necessarily true that the valid perceptions are identical, it is possible for there to be three valid perceptions here which happen to be identical. This is because, as we have already established logically, there can be a case where by the force of karma three different objects, each one confirmed by a valid perception, start to exist. And since this is possible, then it is equally possible that, by the force of karma, three equivalent valid perceptions of a vessel could start to exist as well.

स्वाःवःश्वाश्यायतः नद्दंशः यं वाश्वशः यं न्देश्चे न्याः व्यावाः व्यावः वयः व्यावः व्यवः व्यावः व्यवः व्यावः व्यावः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः व्यः

Generally speaking, each of the three objects mentioned—the pus and the other two—are things of the type that block other objects from entering into the space which they themselves occupy. It is no contradiction though to say that, in this situation where the beings are looking this way, they are not objects such that they block other things from entering into the space they occupy. This is true for the following reason.

A central mountain of the world which is square in shape, and a central mountain of the world which is round in shape, and the like, are objects such that they block other things from entering the space they occupy. Nevertheless, it is possible for both these things to occupy the space taken up by a single central mountain of the world. A red-hot ball of steel is something that's hot, but consider what happens when a person touches it after he has used the mantra of steel on his hand. The sensation that he feels is not a sensation of heat; on the contrary, it is a sensation of something not heat.

[This concludes the section of the text entitled "The Stream."]

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Seven: Black and White Deeds, the "Path of Action," and the Root and Branch Non-Virtues

यक्षायायम्। मुखायान्योत्त्रुम्युयागुकायर्र्भ्रम्थायदेश्मर्दिन्तेगाच्चरायम्।

The following selections are taken from *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*, a commentary to the *Abhidharmakosha* by Gyalwa Gendun Drup, His Holiness the First Dalai Lama.

63
Black, White, and Other Deeds Defined

|श्चे-द्रमो-माञ्चमाश-द्र-दर्द्द-मार्नेमाश-धरे।
|द्रमो-प्र-छेद-दे-द्रमे-द्रम्य-द्य-द्रम्य-द्य

Non-virtue as well as virtue itself taken In by the form and desire represent Respectively deeds which are black, white, and both. The unstained is what brings it to an end.

[IV.237-40]

विंत्र त्यका ने न्या यी दि विंहे त्यु तु लित् । की न्यी य की याक्या त्या इका यम ही का या

Just how do we describe these four types of deeds? **Non-virtue represents** a type of **deed which is black** and ripens into something **black**. It is black in that its very nature consists of something afflicted. It also ripens into something black, for it ripens forth into an undesirable result.

Virtue taken in by the realm of form represents a type of deed which is white and also ripens into something white. This is first of all because of its basic nature: it is unmixed with afflicted types of things, within the mental stream in question. And it ripens forth into a desirable result; with the one mental stream, it is not mixed together with any suffering.

पर्देन्।

परदेन्।

परदेनेन

परदेन्।

पर

Virtue taken in by the realm of desire represents a type of deed which is both white and black, and which also ripens into something both white and black. Since its basic nature is free of affliction it is white but—since within a single mental stream it is also mixed with afflicted things—it is black as well. It ripens into something white because it gives forth a pleasant result but—since within the particular mental stream this is also mixed with suffering—we can also say it ripens into something black.

चर्याक्षेत्रःश्चीःव्यक्षः देश्वेरम्यानः क्षेरम्यद्याः द्वास्य स्थाः क्षेत्रः व्याः व्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्य यः प्येदः देशे

Deeds which are **unstained** never ripen into anything either white or black. Their nature is to be **what brings** "it"—that is, the black kind of deed—to an end.

64
Bringing Black and White Deeds
to an End

विक्तान्त्रीत् व्यक्ष्य व्यवक्ष्य व्यवक्य व्यवक्ष्य व्यवक्य व्यवक्ष्य व्यवक्य व्यवक्ष्य व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्य व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व्यवक्षय व

Twelve types of mental movement had with Phenomena, mastery, and eight of the Uninterrupted path free of desire Are deeds that act to bring the black to an end. That which is the mental movement in the Ninth acts to end the white and black. White by the final uninterrupted arising, Free of desire for the concentration.

[IV.241-8]

वित्यमः वित्रः र्ष्याः मे। केंश्याचेंत्याः श्वेत्यः वित्यः वित्य

Here is how these deeds are brought to an end. First let's take the **twelve types of mental movement had with** the four instants known as **"the mastery of phenomena,"** as well as **eight** instants **of the uninterrupted path** [part of the path of seeing, the direct perception of selflessness] which is **free of desire**. These **are** the **deeds that act to bring black** deeds **to an end,** for they function to eliminate all the mental afflictions that relate to the desire realm.

वरःकरःश्रेरःपदेःत्यश्चात्रःश्चेत्रःश्चेत्रःयःकरःपदेःद्वःतःश्चेतः। वर्रेरःपदेःद्वःयःवरःश्चेतःयःकरःपदेःद्वःयःवरेद्वःयःवदेःश्चेतः। वर्रेरःपदेःद्वःयःवरःश्चेतःयःकरःपदेःद्वःयःवरेद्वः। वर्रेरःपदेःद्वःयःवरेद्वःयःवर्वःश्चेतः। वर्रेरःपदेःद्वःयःवरेद्वःयःवरेद्वःयःवरेद्वः। वर्रेरःपदेःद्वेतःयःवरःश्चेतःयःकरःपदेःद्वःयःश्चेतःयःवरःश्चेतः।

Next let's take that type which is the mental movement in the ninth instant of the uninterrupted path. This is a deed which acts to end the white and black, first of all because it eliminates desire-realm virtue by means of eliminating the aspiration, or the desire, for it. Secondly, it eliminates all the mental afflictions of the desire realm—the process here being that one stops the hold which retains them.

न्यस्यान्त्रः स्वास्यान्त्रः स्वासः न्यस्य स्वासः स

Finally, let's consider the final instant in the arising of the uninterrupted path which is free of desire for the fourth level of concentration. It is by this that white deeds are brought to an end, for here one eliminates aspiration, that is desire, for virtue of the formless realm.

Other Views on the Black and White

|यावयःयुःसञ्चरःयाश्चरःयान्या |यर्ट्रेरःयावयःश्चरःयश्चरःयान्ध्यःशःर्या |यावयःयुःसञ्चरःयश्चरःयान्ध्यःशःर्या

। वर्देर या व्यवासी व्याप्त वा व्यापत व

According to others, understood as those For a hell experience, the two for other desire. Others, what seeing eliminates is black; White and black, others that come from desire.

[IV.249-52]

ब्रें-प्रायालक्ष्में न्यायालक्ष्में प्रायालक्ष्में प्रायालक्षे प्रायालक्षेत्में प्रायालक्षेत्में प्रायालक्षेत्में प्रायालक्षेत्में प्रायालक्षेत्रे प्रायालक्षेत

According to the claim of certain **other** groups, deeds which bring one an **experience** in the **hells** are to be **understood as** the "black" ones. And those that bring one an experience in some **other** birth in the **desire** realm are to be **understood as** the **two:** as deeds that are both white and black.

Still other groups assert that those kinds of deeds which the path of seeing eliminates are the black ones, while the other deeds that come from the desire are both white and black.

We turn next to our fifth group of deeds, which includes those divided on the basis of the person who possesses them.

72
Three Types of Each Path of Action

|र्मेर-प्रक्षित्राच्यक्ष्याः |प्रमानक्ष्याः |प्रकार्म्याः |प्रकार्म्याः |प्रकार्म्याः |प्रकारम्याः |

|क्रम्थःसूट:याहे:सुया:सेट:यशः<u>स</u>्रेस|

The undertakings come from the root three. Because they occur just subsequent to them, Coveting and the rest come from these three. The virtues, with undertaking and conclusion, From no desire, dislike, ignorance.

[IV.272-6]

द्र-स्याम्बुम्यान्त्र्याम्बुम्यान्त्र्रम्यान्त्र्याम्बुम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम् विःस्ट्रिम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्य

Now sutra states that there are three types of killing: that which comes from desiring something, that which comes from disliking something, and that which comes from being ignorant of things. One may ask then whether the various paths of action are each brought to completion by these three roots of all non-virtue.

भ्रेष्ठा अर्रे त्यक्ष म्यूरका या है : श्रेष्ठा मार्डे र या भ्रेष्ठ्य या स्थान स्थान

The answer is that they are not. The statement from sutra was made only with reference to the fact that **the "undertaking"** stages of deeds such as killing **come from the root three.**

प्रमानी स्थान के स्थ

One may next ask for a description of the process by which the "undertaking" stages of the ten non-virtues come from the three roots of non-virtue. Let's start with the act of killing. The "undertaking" stage of this type of act comes from desire in a case where, for example, you take the life of another being in

order to get its flesh to eat. An instance where this stage comes from dislike would be where you kill your enemy. And a case where the undertaking stage comes from being ignorant of things would be where you kill someone like your father or mother out of some meritorious intent.

योट्टे.श्रेयो.जन्नःश्चेन्यः वु.चंन्यः वु.चंन्यः व्यान्यः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित् वन्नः मान्नेवः पनः जिनः पान्तः विष्णः वित्रः विष्णः वित्रः विष्णः वित्रः विष्णः वित्रः विष्णः वित्रः विष्णः वि वित्रः वित्रः पनः जिनः पन्तः वित्रः विष्णः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्

Next let's consider the act of stealing. An example of the "undertaking" stage for this act coming from desire would be where you steal something of value out of a longing for it. A case where this stage comes from dislike would be, for example, where you steal something of value from your enemy. An example of the "undertaking" stage for stealing coming from ignorance is exemplified by the description that "It's religion when a Brahmin steals."

कर्जीश्राचक्रेत्रायर विद्विशाय क्षेत्राय कष्टि क्षेत्राय कष्टि क्षेत्राय क्षेत्र क्षे

Sexual misconduct that comes from desire would be a case where, for example, one engages in some wrong kind of sexual activity because of lustful feelings. Sexual misconduct born from dislike would be represented by engaging in sexual intercourse in order to harm someone else's reputation. Sexual misconduct that you do from ignorance is typified in the statement that "Sex should be enjoyed by everyone together, like the flowers and the fruits of the earth, like a banquet ready for the feast, like a pool in the river, like a public road."

देवु.भहैचा.ब्र्याना.लानाचीर.चयु.ब्रीमा रवा.चयु.ब्रीमः नवा.चयु.ब्रीमः नव.चयु.ब्रीमः नव.चयु.ब्रीमः नवा.चयु.ब्रीमः नव्य.चयु.ब्री

यिषु र्राचउर्याय इस्राया क्याया स्ट्राया है। सुया से राय्या सुराया धेरा दें।

Coveting and the rest of the three misdeeds of thought come from these three roots of non-virtue because they occur just subsequent to them—to these three roots. The ten virtues, and here we consider them with all their various stages (undertaking and conclusion, as well as actual commission), come from the states of possessing no desire for something, no dislike for a thing, and no ignorance of things.

|माशुक्षायात्य| क्रीन्योत्यदेत्यकात्यक्षात्रीतिन्य। क्रीक्रिदेशक्रक्ष्यात्रित्वा त्यकात्यक्षाः मीक्षुक्षायात्य। क्रीन्योत्यदेत्यकात्यकात्रीतिन्य। क्रीक्रिदेशक्रक्ष्यात्रित्वा

This brings us to our third point, a detailed discussion of non-virtuous paths of action. We present first the way these paths are committed, the their individual definitions, and finally the literal meaning of the expression "a path of action."

73
How Non-Virtues are Completed

विश्वास्त्रास्त्र्र्यं स्वास्त्रास्त्र्यं विश्वास्त्रास्त्र्यं विश्वास्त्रास्त्र्यं विश्वास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास् विश्वास्त्रास

Taking life, malice, and harsh speech are Brought to their completion by dislike. Sexual misconduct, coveting, and Stealing are brought to completion by desire. Mistaken views by ignorance of things; The rest accepted as completed by three.

[IV.277-82]

One may ask just what it is that brings each of the different non-virtues to completion. Three of them—taking life, malice, and harsh speech—are brought to their completion by the emotion of dislike.

तःजश्राज्याःके.वर्चेरःचवुःक्षेत्र। द्रे.ह्योश्रात्तरःचेरी ज्याःतरःके.च.योट्टेःश्रेयोःयोश्वाःह्योश्वारान्देरःट्री कुरःश्र्र्रश् वर्ट्रेरःतश्राज्याःतरःयोलुश्वारात्तर्यक्षेत्राःयोश्वार्योशःह्योश्वारान्देरःक्योशःग्रीशः

Another three—the non-virtues of **sexual misconduct, coveting, and stealing—are brought to completion by desire. Mistaken views** are brought to completion **by** an **ignorance of things,** for mistaken views spring from a deep-seated lack of understanding.

क्यान्यःग्रीन्यःग्रीन्यःन्यःग्रायःग्रीन्यःग्रीन्यःभ्यान्यःग्रीन्यःभ्यःग्रीन्यःभ्यःग्रीन्यःभ्यःग्रीन्यःभ्यःग्री

The "rest"—which refers to the three of lying, divisive speech, and meaningless talk—are **accepted as** being **completed by** all **three** poisons of the mind. Such actions motivated by desire, for one example, would be brought to their completion by desire.

74
The Objects of Non-Virtue

|यावि:वे:बोस्याःउव:योद्यःश्चेंद:द्रः। |भेद:द्रःयाञ्चयायःवे:सेदःयोव:वें।

The objects consist of living beings, enjoyments. Names and forms, and then of names as well.

[IV.283-4]

One might ask what things serve as the objects for each of the four divisions of non-virtues just mentioned. **The object** of the non-virtues of the first division **consists of living beings:** killing is to take the life of a living being; malice is to feel hatred for a living being; and—as the root text itself says—"harsh speech is that which is unpleasant."

क्रियायश्चित्रेत्रावि दे वेद्र्या हे प्यापन्या मृत्य बुद्राय वे प्यापन्या क्षेत्र । क्षेत्र या वि वि वि वि वि व

The non-virtues of the second division have **enjoyments** as their object: they occur through enjoyment in the form of physical sensations within a living being, or by force of one's taking possession of certain enjoyments.

इत्र क्रिया अंग्राया वि दे से दार प्राया स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप इत्रो से प्राया स्वाप्त स्व स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्

The objects of the third division are **names and forms**, for the non-virtue in this case arises from a view about the virtues and non-virtues that are all part of names and forms in general. The objects of the last division are **names**, for lying and so forth all occur—ultimately—based on the names of things.

75
Some Ethical Questions

<u>। ঘমম তে বি বি বে বি বি প্রের ৷</u>

There is no actual stage for those who die Before or together, for another body's been born. Because their goal's the same in a war or whatever, All possess it as much as the one who commits it.

[IV.285-8]

। अक्ष्यानुःवित्वायायशायशायशानुःन्देशायवित्वुदादशास्त्रःवितःन्तः। अक्ष्यानुःवित्वायायशायशायशानुःन्देशायवित्वुदादसास्रोत्वुदावेत्।

"Suppose," one may begin, "that a person takes a weapon and delivers a blow to someone else which is sure to kill him, but then this murderer himself happens to **die**, either **before** his victim **or together** with him—at the same time. Can we say then that the **actual** "commission" **stage** of a full path of action has occurred **for** such a murderer, or not?"

दे.ज.इ.जीब्र.च.श्रद्धी याश्चर.चे.श.जी.चर.इ.श्र.जींद्धीर.च.श.चीश.तपुरीर। वे.य.जीब्र.चालय.श्रीश.जीटा। देश.त.स्जात्त्राचीश्चरतपुरीर। याश्चर.ची.याश्चर.ची.

The answer is that **there is no** occurrence of this stage for such a person. In the first place, the stage cannot occur before the victim dies; in the second place, where the murderer dies at the same time as his victim, **another body** of the killer **has been born.** There is no actual commission because the body never went through the stage of undertaking this act towards the victim in question.

One may raise another question: "Suppose a group of people are engaged in a war or similar activity, and one of these people kills someone from the other side. Does a path of action occur only for the one person who actually did the killing?" It does not. **Because** they are engaged **in** the **war** (**or whatever** activity it may be) for **the same** common **goal**, all the people involved come to possess a full path of action, just **as much as the one who commits it.**

यक्षिरायाया सम्यावि बाह्मरावि ध्यस्यावियायवरायवी

Next we present the definition of each individual non-virtue. We start with the "root" non-virtues, continue to the "four expressions," and end with the six "branch" non-virtues.

76
Definitions of the Four
"Root" Non-Virtues

।श्र्मामार्डर्यः वे न्यस्यस्य प्रवितः तु।
सार्वे र प्रयः वे प्राव्यस्य प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः वितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्रवितः प्रयः प्रवितः प्र

Taking life is killing another being Purposely, and without a mistake. Stealing is to take possession of Another's wealth by means of force or stealth. Sexual misconduct, of four types, Engaging in improper kinds of sex. Lying's when the meanings of one's words Are understood, a wrong impression given.

[IV.289-96]

पर-वि-च-व-क्रिय-प्र-च-व-क्रियां प्रमास्त्र क्रियां क्रियं क्रियां क्रियां क्रियां क्रियां क्रियां क्रियां क्रियां क्रियं क्

"What," one may ask, "is the basic nature of each of the ten non-virtues?" The **taking** of **life is** defined as **killing another being purposely, and without a mistake.** The word "purposely" is meant to indicate that there is no problem like where the being in question has died but there was no intent.

याल्य-लेश-त्रश्चर-त्रश्चीय-त्

The words "without a mistake" are meant to indicate that no "actual-commission" stage of an act occurs in a case of mistaken identity; for example, in a case where you undertake to kill John but instead kill Joe because you have mistaken him for John. The word "another," finally, is meant to indicate that no "actual-commission" stage occurs either in an instance where one takes his own life.

त्र्युर्रायाः स्राधाः चित्राः वित्राः वित्रः वित्य

Stealing is to take possession of another's wealth, purposely and without a mistake, whether it be by means of superior force or by stealth—undetected. Sexual misconduct is engaging in kinds of sex which are improper to perform, purposely and with no mistaken identity.

याल्य श्रीश्रायन्या मुन्द्र्य करानु वर्षेया यदे छे नुः श्रीया यदे छे नुः श्रीया यद्रिया यद्रे छे नुः श्रीया यदि छे नुः श्रीया यदे छे नुः श्रीया यदि छो नुः श्रीया यदि छे नुः श्रीया यदि छो निष् छ । यदि छो निष् छ नुः श्रीया यदि छो निष् छ । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छ । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो । यदि छो निष् छो । यदि छो

त्यीरः चतुः स्त्रीर।

यार्टा स्त्रीरायार्टा यश्चेत्रायात्यात्यात्यात्रायात्रायाः प्रश्नेतः चत्रायाः प्रश्नेतः चत्रायाः चत्रायाः च्याः च्य

This sexual misconduct is **of four** different **types**, as the number of the following list each constitutes one of its forms:

- 1) sex with someone else's wife or with a woman who, although she is not another person's wife, is too closely related to oneself—his mother, or sister, or any female related to one up to seven generations past;
- 2) sex with a woman, even if she is one's wife, using an improper part of her body—her mouth or anus;
- 3) sex in an improper place—out in the open or in the environs of a shrine or temple; and
- 4) sex at an improper time—while a baby is still nursing from the woman, or when she is pregnant, or during the period that she is observing the one-day layman's vow.

क्र्या-यी-ट्रेंब-स-ट्र्य-प्रंब-अट्रेंब-य-र्या-युंग्वेंब-याव्व-तु-यञ्चु-र-व्य-श्चेंब-यव्य-

Lying is when the meanings of one's spoken words are understood by the other person involved, and a wrong impression has been given him—purposely, and without any mistaken identity.

Next we describe the "four expressions."

77
The Four Expressions

|भेग्।इ'भेर्ग्गे;इस्र'वेश्र'रः। |गशुस'ग्रीश'कुस्रश'शुर्धेर'ग्रार'रे। |सर्वेर'र्वेश'इस्र'यर'वेश'य'र्र'। |हेग्रश्य'पेर'हे'रेस'यबेर'यवर।

That experienced by consciousness
Of eye, of ear, the thought, and by the three
Represents respectively what's seen,
What's heard, what's known, and also what is sensed.

[IV.297-300]

Now sutra makes mention of the "eight expressions of a child" [one who has yet to see selflessness directly], which consist of:

- 1) four types where you say "I didn't see it" and so on about four different kinds of things—things that you really did see, hear, know, or sense; and
- 2) four types where you say "I did see it" and so on about another four kinds of things—things that you really didn't see, hear, know, or sense.

स्रोत्तर्याश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त्र विश्वास प्रति । स्वादि स्थास स्वेशास स्वेशास प्रति । स्वेत्त्र स्थास स्वेशास स्वेशास

स्थायर विश्वाय प्राप्त क्षेत्र विश्वाय क्षेत्र विश्वाय प्राप्त विश्वाय विश्वा

Sutra also mentions the "eight expressions of a realized person"—four where you say "I did see it" about things you really did see and so on; four where you say "I didn't see it" about things you really didn't see and such.

Regarding these two sets of eight, one may ask for a more detailed description of the basic four: what it is to be "something seen," "something heard," and so on. That which is experienced by consciousness of the eye, consciousness of the ear, consciousness of the thought, and by the other three kinds of consciousness (those of nose, tongue, and body) represents respectively what is seen, what is heard, what is known, and also what is sensed.

We turn next to a description of the six "branch" non-virtues.

78 Six "Branch" Non-Virtues

|द्यो:दर:श्रे:द्यो:श्रेद:श्रु:य। |व्यंवा:यर:श्रु:य:धेद::

Divisive speech, the words of a mentally Afflicted state meant to split up others. Harsh speech is that which is unpleasant; Meaningless, really every afflicted. Others, every other afflicted type like Flattery for gain, a song, a show. Like too wrong commentaries. Coveting Wrong desire for another's wealth. Harmful intent, hating a living being; Mistaken view, the idea that neither virtue Nor non-virtue even exists.

[IV.301-11a]

विश्वास्त्रे स्थान्य क्षेत्र क्षेत्र

Divisive speech consists of words which are spoken purposely, without any mistake, and in a mentally afflicted state; they are meant to split up others who are friends, and their meaning should be understood by the other person. אַר בּיִל בּיִל בְּיִל בְיִל בְּיִל בְיִל בְיִל בְיִל בְּיִל בְיִל בְּיִל בְּיִל בְיִל בְיִל בְיִל בְּיל בְיל בְּיל בְּיב

Harsh speech consists of unpleasant words which are spoken purposely, and without any mistake; their meaning too should be understood by the other person.

वश्रात्त्री त्राप्त त्र क्षेत्र क्

"Meaningless speech" really refers to every case of words spoken in an afflicted state of mind. Other groups say that what "meaningless speech"

actually refers to is **every afflicted type** of the spoken word **other** than those three already mentioned. They say cases would be **like** a monk's engaging in the improper livelihood of **flattering** someone **for** the purpose of some **gain**, or else singing **a song** out of desire.

र्मेर् स्राचर स्राचित स्रिक्त प्रति । यात्र प्रस्ति । यात्र स्राच्य स्राचित स्रिक्त प्रति । यात्र स्राच्य स्रिक्त प्रति । यात्र स्राच्य स्रिक्त प्रति । यात्र स्रिक्त स्र स्रिक्त प्रति । यात्र स्रिक्त स्रिक्

Still other cases would be where the monk told stories to entertain others at a **show** put on by some performer, or **too** where he began reciting some **wrong commentary** written by a non-Buddhist.

यार्द्रन्यः श्रेम्यः व्याप्तः व्यापतः व्यापत

Coveting consists of a wrong (that is, an improper) desire for another's wealth, which leads to a wish that one make it his own. Harmful intent is the desire to hurt another living being, a desire which comes from the attitude of hating him. And mistaken view is the idea that neither virtue nor non-virtue even exists.

Next we discuss the literal meaning of the expression "a path of action."

79
Explanation of the Expression
"Path of Action"

|মাধ্যম.লম.చ2.ব.ধু.লম.মীৼ.লুধ। ...ব2.লা

In them, Three are paths, seven deeds as well.

[IV.311b-12]

One may ask why the expression "path of action" is used **in** reference to "them"—to the group of ten just listed. The name derives first of all from the fact that the **three** involved with thought **are paths** by which the "action" or deed of mental movement is expressed. Moreover, the **seven** involved with body and speech are action or **deeds** themselves, **as well** as paths through which mental movement is expressed. Thus they are all "paths of action."

The fourth major part in our presentation of the "paths of action" concerns the ways in which one loses, and then regains, his most basic virtue.

<u>। इ. व्यापात्रक्र्या योशायर्श्वेशशायद्य त्यशार्श्वेशक्र्या त्यशा</u>

The following selections are from the *Great Book on the Steps of the Path*, composed by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

Here is the first. One may ask, "How do you define the act of killing?" The *Abbreviation* says that five parts are involved: the object, the conception, the thinking, the bad thought, and the conclusion. These five can be shortened into four: the middle three can be included into the thinking, and we can add the stage of undertaking; this makes the presentation easier, and in no way violates the intention of the original text.

ने'य'र्श्वेवा'वार्डेन'ग्री'वालि'ते। श्वेवा'न्द्र'ख्रुन'यदे'श्रेश्वश्चत्र'हे। ने'य्यद्र'वार्श्वेन'य'र्थे रूद'हेन'वार्शेन'त'र्श्वेन'वदे'श्वेवा'य'र्थेन'ग्री। स्वर्म'द्यवा'स्रेन'य'य'न्वेद्र्य'त्र्य

इयायम्रें र क्रें र प्रदेश्याययार्थ्या क्रम्यायायार्थे व्याप्रें स्थायार्थे स्थायार्थे स्थायार्थे स्थायार्थे स

Now the object for killing is a sentient being: anything with life. The *Levels of Practitioners* does state "another living being," but is only referring to the fact that, when the murderer is murdering himself, there is a wrong deed of undertaking, but not one of completion.

द्रास्त्रियायात्रीक्षायात्रीक्षायात्रीयायात्रा यक्षिणायात्री यक्षिणायात्री यक्षिणायात्री यक्षिणायात्री यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षा यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षिणायात्रा यक्षिणायात्र

The part of the thinking has three components of its own. Conception can be of four different types: to conceive of the object, say a living being, as being a living being; to conceive of a living being as something other than a living being; to conceive of something other than a living being as being other than a living being, and to conceive of this same thing as a living being. The first and third types of conception here are unmistaken; the second and fourth are mistaken.

द्रीत्यास्य त्यात्य त्याय त्यात्य त्याय त्य त्याय त्य त्याय त्य त्याय त्य

This is a particular feature of the motivation. Suppose, for example, that you think to yourself, "I only want to kill John," and undertake the deed. Then you mistake Joe for John, and kill Joe. In this sort of case, there is no "actual-commission" stage; so we can see that, for this stage, the conception you have must be unmistaken. If on the other hand you undertake the deed with some general kind of motivation, if you think to yourself, "I'll kill anyone I happen to meet," then this detail of the conception having to be unmistaken need not be complete. You should understand that this point applies to the other nine as well.

क्रेंबरब्रेटबरमञ्जी तुवावाबुबरवाटरहरारेगा

The second component of the thinking is the bad thought involved. In this case, it can be any of the three poisons.

A third component is the motivation; here, it is the wish to kill.

यत्। वर्षा देयाःचान्ना देयाःक्रियानःग्रीःक्षेत्रं वर्षःक्षेत्रः यःयन्तः स्वानः याद्यान्यः याद्याः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षे वर्षाः वर्

Here are the different aspects of the undertaking. As far as the one who undertakes the deed, it doesn't matter whether you perform it yourself, or get someone else to do it for you, it's all the same. The essence of the undertaking is when the deed is initiated, either with some kind of weapon, or poison, or spell, or whatever the case may be.

भ्रीमासीमानी श्रीमानानिकातान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्

The conclusion occurs when, due to this undertaking of the deed, the other person dies, either at the time of the undertaking, or later on. As the *Treasure House of Knowledge* says,

There is no actual stage for those who die Before or together, for another body's been born.

यः ले स्ट्योश्यास्त्र प्रद्याः स्ट्या प्रद्याः प्रद्याः स्ट्याः स्ट्याः यो स

Three of the ten—killing, harsh words, and harmful intent—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, and are brought to a conclusion by disliking.

Three of them—stealing, sexual misconduct, and coveting—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, but are brought to a conclusion only by desire.

Three more—lying, divisive speech, and meaningless speech—can be initiated and brought to a conclusion by all three.

One of the ten—wrong views—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, but is brought to a conclusion only by dark ignorance.

The movements of the mind are an action (karma) but not a path of action. The seven of body and speech are both an action and—because they are the basis in which the movement of the mind engages—are also a path of action. The three of coveting and so on are a path of action but not themselves action (karma).

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Eight: Most Basic Virtue, and the Projecting and Finishing Energy of Deeds

।मुल-प-न्यो-वर्ष-युप-गुर्य-पर्हे सम्य-पदे-सहँद-तेग्। वर-लस-यासल-गुर्।

The following selections are from the First Dalai Lama's commentary to the *Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha)*, entitled *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*. They include the root text of Master Vasubandhu.

80 How Most Basic Virtue is Lost

अिट्ट प्राप्ति प्रश्चित्र स्त्र प्राप्ति । अहे प्राप्त प्रम्य स्त्र प्राप्ति । अहे प्राप्त प्रम्य स्त्र प्राप्त स्त्र प्राप्त स्त्र प्राप्त स्त्र स्त्र प्राप्त स्त्र स्त्र प्राप्त स्त्र स्त्र

Most basic lost by the view they don't exist; Taken in the desire, had from birth. Through the one denying cause and effect, And through all. In stages, among humans, Lost by those who are male or female, by the Intellectual. This is not to have it.

[IV.313-8]

प्राचित्र प्राचित्र विकास के स्वाधित के स्व

One may ask just what kind of non-virtue can make one lose his most basic virtue. The **most basic** virtue that a person possesses is **lost by the view** that certain important objects **don't** even **exist.**

One may next ask how the process occurs. Most basic virtue which is **taken** in by **the** realm of **desire** can be lost, but not that which is taken in by the form or formless realms. This is because the types of views required can never appear in the mental streams of the beings of these realms.

त्र्र्न्यरम्मित्रायायः प्यतः स्त्रीयात्रयः स्त्रायायायः स्त्रियः स्त्रायायः स्त्रियः स्त्रायायः स्त्रियः स्त्र व्यापाः स्त्रायाः स्

Even among the most basic virtues included in the realm of desire, only those which one had from birth can be lost—never those which have been acquired by applying some efforts in practice. This is because these latter types of virtue are gone by the time the mistaken views involved have even reached a minor stage of minor intensity. They have been lost because the hold retaining them was lost.

As for the type of mistaken view involved, a person loses his most basic virtue **through the one denying** the principles of **cause and effect.** It is not however the view that realized beings do not exist which causes one to lose his most basic virtues.

भक्ष्यः वयाः यद्यः वयाः योदः त्यः द्ययेषायः योद्धः योद्धः योद्धः योद्धः यदः योद्धः याः योद्धः योद्धः योद्धः य । वयाः योदः द्यः व्यक्षः वयाः योदः योद्धः योद्ध

Now some make the claim that views involving unstained phenomena or levels which are not comparable cannot cause a person to lose his most basic virtues. The fact though is that this virtue can be lost **through all** the forms of this view: through those that focus on levels that are comparable or those which are not; through those that focus on unstained phenomena or on those with stain.

How exactly does the loss occur? Some claim that a person loses his most basic virtue all at once, the same way he loses all the undesirable objects that the path of seeing eliminates, once he gains this path. What actually happens though is that the virtue is lost **in stages**, the same way one loses the undesirable objects eliminated by the path of habituation.

मुन्नः प्रतिः श्रीन्।

क्षित्रः प्रतिः श्रीनः ।

क्षित्रः प्रतिः श्रीनः ।

क्षित्रः प्रतिः स्वाध्यान् स्वाध्यान्यान् स्वाध्यान् स्वाध्यान्यान्यः स्वाध्यान्यः स्वाध्यान् स्वाध्यान्यः स्वाध्यान् स्वाध्यान्यः स्वाध्यान् स्वाध्यान् स्वाध्यान्यः

One may next ask what kind of being can lose his basic virtue. Such a loss can occur **among humans** of the three continents, but not among other types of beings. The afflicted mental capacity of hell beings lacks the necessary stability, and the same lack of stability characterizes the non-virtuous thoughts of humans on the continent of Terrible Sound. Pleasure beings in the realms of desire and form are beings who see the three conditions directly; the principles of cause and effect are evident to them therefore, just after their birth.

भ्रेणप्रते प्रमान स्थाप स्याप स्थाप स्याप स्थाप स्याप स्थाप स्थाप

Even among humans, basic virtue is **lost by those who are male or female**—not by those who have lost their sexual organ, or who never had one. This is because non-virtuous thoughts in the minds of such beings are never very stable.

भ्रात्याक्ष्यान्त्र्यान्त्र्यान्त्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्य

Humans in general can be divided into two types: **the** more **intellectual**, and the more sensual. It is the former of the two that can lose this virtue, for they are capable of sustained intellectual activity marred by mental afflictions.

न्योः सः कन् पाने वे रे रे वे वे न्यो सः न्य की खूब पर्वे।

The basic nature of **this** loss or what we call "cut-off" of a person's most basic virtue **is** simply **not to have it.**

81 How Most Basic Virtue is Regained

|અૹઅૹ૽૽૽૽ૹ૽ૺૹ૽ૼૹ૽ૻઌ૽ૼઽ૽ૡૢૺ૽ઌૹ૽ |અૹઅૹ૽૽ઽ૽૽૽ૢૺઽ૽૽ઌ૽૽૾ૡ૽૾ૺ૽ૡ૽૾ૺઌ૽ૹ૽૱ૢ

Regained by suspecting, view there are; Not in this, when immediate's done.

[IV.319-20]

"What," one may ask, "can help a person regain his most basic virtue after he has lost it?" This virtue can first be **regained** simply **by suspecting** that the principles regarding deeds and their results may actually exist. It can also be regained by gaining the correct **view**, whereby one actually perceives that **there** really **are** such principles.

One may ask whether it is always certain that a person will be able to regain his most basic virtue in the same life that he lost it. The answer is that he does **not** regain the virtue **in this** same life **when** he has **done** any of the **"immediate"** type of wrong deeds.

भक्षभाक्ष्रिंद्र-यः त्रुप्तर्थे। यस्त्र-प्रश्चित्रा श्चित्र श

"When then," one may ask, "does such a person regain his basic virtue?" If he originally lost this virtue because of some main cause, then the person regains it once he dies and migrates out of his hell birth. If on the other hand it was only some secondary factor that made him lose the virtue, then he regains it when he takes his hell birth.

94
The Projecting Energy of Deeds

|गठिग'मीर्थाञ्ची'य'गठिग'दधेद'र्हे।

A single one projects a single birth.

[IV.377]

Does a single deed project but a single birth, or many different births? And do a number of deeds project a number of births, or just a single birth? The answer is that **a single** deed **projects a single birth**; it cannot project a number of births. And since they would function to project a whole group of similar births, a number of deeds on the other hand is never something that projects but a single birth. This by the way is all the Detailist system.

विंत् मुवार्ये द्राप्य प्रमायम् स्वापित सर्वे सर्वे त्यम्

Now someone may object that this description contradicts the following quotation from the *Sutra of Sovereignty*—

The elder, Aniruddha, spoke to the monks as follows:

"Venerable monks, I once took a birth in Varanasi, as a poor man whose job it was to collect straw for use as fuel. The poor man made the traditional offerings of food to a Self-Made Buddha by the name of Tengnesam [?], who was also known as `the one with the top center part of his head protruding like a *takar* flower.'

विद्याम्बर्धित्यः संस्थान् । त्राप्ति विद्याः स्वाप्तः स्वापतः स्वाप्तः स्वापतः स्वापतः

"My one act of giving away these offerings ripened into a birth as a pleasure being in the Land of the Thirty-Three. I was born there a total of seven times, and then took another seven births as a Wheel Emperor. And still it continues now, with my present birth into the wealthier class of the Shakyas."

Yet there is no contradiction: the process was as follows. His offerings brought the poor man the good fortunes of a happier birth; later, he recalled what had brought him this state. These recollections themselves brought him still further merit. Thus although we can say that the one act of merit brought him such and such different births, what we really mean is that he achieved these births through a process that began with the one act. It's like saying "I got rich on a single *dong-tse* [an amount of money]" when what you really did was start with a single *dong-tse* and turn it over in a great many business deals until eventually you became wealthy.

१८८२ वर्षेत्रक्ष्म् स्थायियाय्यायः ने त्यायहेषः द्यायायः वर्ष्मः स्थायः स

You could also say that the poor man started with the one instance of offering food and that it caused numerous instances of gladness and rejoicing over the act; these are themselves deeds consisting of a movement of the mind, and the many births can be said to have resulted from them.

95
The Finishing Energy of Deeds

।ल्रिं रू.ह्यां श्राचीर यातु साथीता

Those that act to finish them off are many.

[IV.378]

|यशःयाद्ययाः योशःदसरशः पदः रेशः सञ्च रायदः क्रीः यः देवः विराधरः योः क्रेशः स्ट्रा

सर्ग्वेर्यास्य मेर्डिं स्वर्धः व्यक्षः विषयः म्या विषयः म्या स्वर्धः स्वर्

It is but a single energy of deeds that projects a birth having a nature consistent with the deed; **those** deeds though **that act to finish off** the finer details of this future life **are many**. A master painter for example can sketch out the canvas with a single piece of chalk, and then a number of other people can come and fill it in with various different colors.

स्त्री स्त्री विश्वाति स्त्री स्त्र

Any given group of people is similar in being human, but some of them who've had the details of their lives finished by virtuous deeds will have more attractive bodies, all their senses complete, greater material wealth, freedom from illness, positions of greater authority, and so on. Others in the same group who've had the details of their lives finished by non-virtuous deeds will have bodies with a repulsive appearance and so on.

Thus we can say that all four combinations between the two are possible: projection of a life by virtue but finishing by non-virtue, the reverse, a case where both are virtue, and a case where both are non-virtue. An example of the first would be persons born as pleasure beings or humans but who possessed certain sufferings.

यक्षेत्रात्तर्भे क्ष्यामुन्त्रात्त्रात्वेत्रहारा। युवेशक्षयार्धेत्रमुत्राक्ष्यम्।

यद्रा वर्षियात्रे वर्षे विष्यात्रे वर्षे विषयात्रे वर्षे वर

An illustration of the second would be either the "Lord of All Things"—the Lord of Death—or the kings of the serpent-like *nagas*, those like the "Prince of Opulence." An example of the third combination would be "Hundred Offerings"—lord of the great pleasure beings. And a case of the final combination would be the beings in the lowest hell, known as "No Respite."

The Sutrists and others assert though that there are many explanations, in a number of different sutras, that a single deed can project multiple rebirths. Therefore, they say, a single deed can project many births and a number of deeds can as well project a single birth.

96
Deeds that do not Project a Life

| बेस्रक्षः सेरः क्ष्र्रेंस्रक्षः यरः वहुयाः यः नया |

The balanced meditations that stop the mind Never act to project; neither do holds.

[IV.379-80]

य्यायाः हेः त्यायाः अत्राध्यायाः विद्याः यात्राध्याः विद्याः यात्राध्याः विद्याः यात्राध्याः विद्याः यात्राध्य याद्यायाः हें त्याः विद्याः विद्याः यात्राध्याः यात्राध्याः विद्याः यात्राध्याः यात्राध्य

One may ask whether every different kind of deed can function to project a new life. The answer is that **the** two **balanced meditations that stop the mind never act to project** a life, even though they do come with the "ripened" sorts of results. This is because the lives in question have already been projected, by the fourth concentration level and the "peak" level. Moreover, beings in these states have no mind—and deeds that do not occur together with a movement of the mind are of very little force.

देव:ब्रीर-ब्रेंश्वरावहियाःयाक्षेत्राग्नीः इसाश्चीतः व्यवदः हें प्रायतः स्वीतः स्वीतः

Thus we can say the expression that "the two balanced meditations ripen into the long life of a pleasure being, or into a life at the peak level" refers only to their function in finishing the final details of such rebirths. The projecting force though is something supplied by the fourth level of concentration and the "peak" level of existence.

त्रश्चर्रात्रेरात्रेराव्याक्ष्रेत्र । क्ष्यायाक्ष्रेत्र । क्ष्यायाक्षेत्र । क्ष्यायाक्ष्रेत्र । क्ष्यायाक्षेत्र । क्ष्यायाकष्य । क्ष्यायाकष्य । क्ष्यायाकष्य । क्ष्यायाकष्य । क्ष्यायाकष्य । क्ष्यायक्षेत्र । क्ष्यावक्षेत्र । क्ष्यायक्षेत्र । क्ष्यायक्

Neither do holds, whether they be virtuous or non-virtuous, act to project a life—even when they occur together with a particular deed. First of all, the deed and the hold have different results. Secondly, the hold is only an incidental occurrence, for it does not involve a movement of the mind. It is therefore of very little force. Finally, the hold is to the deed as the bark is to the tree—something distinctly separate.

Holds however which constitute either virtue with stain or non-virtue do function to finish off the details of a given life. Just so examples of stained deeds that are present in the mental stream of a realized being, as well as the four stages of the peak of preparation (which we also call the "path that leads to certain separation") function only as "finishing" types of energy.

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Nine: The Five Immediate Misdeeds, and the Concept of a Schism

मिलायान्यो प्रत्याच्या । स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया । स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया । स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया । स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया । स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया । स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया । स्थितायाया । स्थिताया । स

The following selections are from the First Dalai Lama's commentary to the *Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha)*, entitled *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*. They include the root text of Master Vasubandhu.

99 Introduction to the Five Immediate Misdeeds

। निया त्युव निवेष के के त्यु न्यये।
। निया त्यु व निवेष के के त्यु न्य के व्या । विष्य निया निया त्या के व्या । विषय के व्या के विषय के विषय

Split community, a thing without a Link, its nature to be unreconciled. Not afflicted, neither specified,

Something the community possesses. The disapproved that leads to it's a lie; This the one who made the schism has.

[IV.389-394]

श्र्वं यार्ड्र-पदः ह्यें र प्राप्तेत्र प्रशास्त्र स्थान्त्र प्रशास्त्र प्रति प्रशास्त्र प्रशास्त प्रस्ते प्रस्त

The first three of the five "immediate" misdeeds mentioned above are different types of killing, and the fifth is a preliminary to killing. These are, therefore, deeds of the body. The fourth of the immediate misdeeds is a kind of lie, and therefore a deed of speech.

चयाः स्यायः त्यायः स्यायः स्य

Now a **split** in the **community** of monks, at least according to the Detailist system, is said to "exist as a distinct entity—it is **a thing** (one of the factors) **without** involvement in **a** mental **link**; **its** basic **nature** is for the two factions of the community of monks **to be** still **unreconciled**.

तीर.री.श्चर्रेष.सूर्या रेग्नी.यर.पीर.री.यर्षेष.तालर.भूष.तथा स्.मू.सूर्य.ता.तार.पीर.री.यर्षेष.तालर.भूष.तथा स्.मू.सूर्य.ता.

Such a split can also belong to both those who have eliminated their mental afflictions and those who have lost even their most basic virtue; the nature of the split is thus such that it is **not afflicted**, but **neither** was it **specified** as being virtue. We can therefore say that it is ethically neutral, without acting as an obstacle.

यश्ची । प्राचित्व प्राचित्व विकास के अवस्था । प्राचित प्राच प्राचित प्राचित प्राच प्राच प्राचित प्राचित प्राचित प्राचित प्राचित प्राचित प्राचित प्राच

The kind of schism described here is **something the community** of monks on both the opposing sides **possesses**. It is not though the "immediate" misdeed itself. **The disapproved deed that leads to** the community's division—its cause—**is a lie** that functions to split the community up.

It is the lie which constitutes the immediate misdeed, and **this the one who made the schism** in the community **has**—whether it be Devadatta or someone else.

100 Consequences of Immediate Misdeeds

।ॐयो.तस.योर्ट्र.त.ॐयो.तर.उर्वीर। ।यञ्चेल.तर.शर्थर.श्रुर.तर.ञ्चेर।

It ripens to that Without Respite for an eon; Extra torment comes from extra ones. [IV.395-6]

र्। यर.ग्री.यश्रेजातर.श्रेषर.श्रेर.तदु.रश्रेजा.यर.श्रेया.यर्जात्यःश्रेषःतर.श्रेष्यातर.वर्ग्येर. १८ग्रे.पर्ये.य्ये.रिवेष.ग्री.शक्शश्राश्चरतदु.जश्र.दु.र्षःश्रेषःश्चर व्रीट.ता.त्.र्ये

"Into what kind of consequence," one may ask, "does the immediate misdeed of dividing the community ripen?" **It ripens** into suffering, for the person who committed it, within the hell known as **"Without Respite."** He must endure this suffering **for** the length of **an** intermediate **eon.**

"And what happens," one might continue, "when a person commits any of the remaining immediate misdeeds?" Committing any of these other immediate misdeeds is certain to lead one to a birth in the hells, but in a more specific sense it is not a definite thing that they will always bring a birth in the hell Without Respite.

वि.य.भक्षभ्याश्चर्यात्रेश्वात्त्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात् भाष्ट्रीया त्रायत्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्य भाष्ट्रीया स्वत्र्यस्यम् स्वत्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्य

One might next pose the following question:

Suppose a person commits two, or even more, of the "immediate" misdeeds. If he takes only one birth in the hells, then you would have to say that committing several of these deeds is no more serious than committing only one. If one the other hand he takes two or however many births in the hells, you can no longer say that these deeds give "immediate" results, and that their results are invariably experienced in the very next life.

ख्रिंशः च्राः विकान्त्रः विकान्त्यः विकान्त्रः विकान्त्रः विकान्त्रः विकान्त्रः विकान्त्रः विकान्त

The Detailists respond with the following claim:

A person takes no more than a single birth in the hells as a result of committing "extra ones"—that is two, three, or even more immediate misdeeds. His body there in the hell of "Without Respite" though is twice the normal size (or more, according to the number of such deeds committed), and much more sensitive. He therefore feels an extra amount of pain: his torment increases in multiples the same way as his size. This frees us of both the problems you raised; incidentally, the earlier of the deeds is the one that projects the birth and the later one (or ones) finishes the details.

यश्यायः श्रेन्यं प्रदेश्चेन।

The Sutrists and others though explain the point as follows:

If a person commits a number of immediate misdeeds, he is born into the hell of torment Without Respite again and again. There is though no other type of birth taken between the body in which the deed was done and the body of the hellbeing, so the result is still "immediate." The idea that the result must be experienced in the very next life cannot be substantiated.

101 Details of a Schism

বিন্ত্রীর্ শ্রেন্তুর কুর প্রত্থা প্রত্থা ক্রিন্ত্র প্রত্যা ক্রিন্ত্র প্রত্যা ক্রিন্ত্র প্রত্যা ক্রিন্ত্র প্রত্যা

The schism's made by an intellectual, Full monk with his morals, elsewhere, children.

[IV.397-8]

What kind of person causes the split? The schism is made by someone who is a full monk and an intellectual type with all his morals. The person in question cannot be a layman, or the type more inclined to sensual pleasures, or someone who has lost his morals. This is because, first of all, he is vying with the Buddha. Secondly, he must have a very sharp mind. Finally, the community of monks would lend no credence to such types.

र्यात्र्यंत्रिम् अरम्भूम् विष्यंत्रिम् विषयः वि

Where does the split occur? It must take place "elsewhere"—that is, in some location other than where the Buddha himself is residing. It could never occur in the direct presence of the Buddha, since his overwhelming glory would never permit it. And who is it that gets split off? It is only "children"—that is to say, common beings [which refers to those who have yet to see selflessness directly]—among the community of monks who are estranged. Realized beings cannot be led into a schism, for they possess a faith in the Buddha born from knowledge: they have perceived Reality directly.

[यःद्वेयाःयर्चेदःयःव्रेवःयदेःश्चेःयंः द्वस्यःगुदः द्वेःयरः स्रेःदुः वरः संःवेरा

Some people have claimed that it is also impossible to split up persons who have achieved the "mastery" stage of the path of preparation.

102
Details of a Schism, Continued

। श्रें दः दः त्यसः म्वावदः तः मार्चे दः सा । में मार्वे दे दे दे से स्मान्य स्था । दे में मार्वे दे से स्था स्था

Split at the acceptance of another Teacher, path. It does not remain. Accepted as a breaking of the wheel.

[IV.399-401]

त्रुवः त्रेः तर्वे। यारः यो कें कें व्यान्य क्ष्या व्यान्य क्ष्य क्ष्या व्यान्य क्ष्य व्यान्य क्ष्या व्यान्य क्ष्य व्यान्य क्ष्य व्यान्य क्ष्य व्यान्य क्ष्य व्यान्य व्यान्य क्ष्य व्यान्य व्याव्य व

One may ask at what point a schism is considered to have occurred. The community of monks is considered **split at** that point when, first of all, there is an **acceptance of** some **Teacher** (namely, Devadatta) **other** than the Buddha himself. Secondly, this is the point where there is an acceptance and attempt to practice some **path other** than that enunciated by the Buddha. This opposing path consists of the "Five Rules" set forth by Devadatta for attaining freedom from the world:

- 1) giving up the use of curds;
- 2) giving up meat;
- 3) giving up salt;
- 4) giving up the traditional patchwork robes; and
- 5) staying in temples inside of towns.

ग्रुष:हे:श्रेर:रु:म्रुष:बे:बे:बे:केंब:केंद:ग्रेष:ब्या:म्रुय:यश:रेट:रु:शे: म्रुष:स्रो

And how long does the schism last? This split in the community has its own peculiar nature: **it does not remain** for more than one 24-hour period.

A division of the community of monks is **accepted as a breaking of the wheel** of the teachings, for no new paths start up in the minds of anyone at all until the estranged monks are reconciled. What we've described here is the immediate misdeed of a schism in the community; other types of divisions are possible, but do not constitute the "immediate" type of deed.

103 Further Details of a Schism

বিশ্বমানুরি:শ্লীন:বর্র:নৃন্যু:র্মিনাঝাস্ট্রা বিশ্বমানুরি:শ্লীন:নাধ্যুমারা বিশ্বমানুরি:শ্লীনাবাধ্যুমারা

On the Dzambu Continent, nine or such. Split activities, on three continents; This one with involvement of eight or more.

[IV.402-4]

नवीः श्रॅम्प्य स्वर्ष्य स्वर्ष स्वर्ष्य स्वर्ष स्वर्ष्य स्वर्ष स्वर्ष स्वर्ष स्वर्ष स्वर्ष्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्ष स्वर्ष स्वर्ष स्वर्य स्वर्ष स्वर्ष स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वरत्य स्वर्ष स्वर्य स्वर्ष स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वय

The break in the wheel described above occurs **on Dzambu Continent** (as this is where the Buddha resides), but not on the others. As for the individuals involved, the deed can only be accomplished with **nine "or such"** (meaning "or more") full monks. This is because it takes at least four monks to make what we call a "community" of monks; there have to be two such groups created, along with one person who incites the schism—and he too must definitely be a full monk. This of course represents the bare minimum—there is no certainty that a great many more individuals might not be involved in such a schism.

नियमाणी: निवेदा दे निस्त्र पार्थिन पार्स्स की सूर्व का मित्र पार्थित स्वर्ध की निस्त्र की की की की की की की की नियमाणी: निवेदा दे निस्त्र पार्थिन पार्स्स् की सूर्व का मित्र पार्थित स्वर्ध की की

Now what we call a "split in the activities" of the community can occur on three different continents—that is, on any one where the teachings exist, which would eliminate only the northern continent of Terrible Sound. This type of schism occurs only within the confines of a single physical monastic institution, and where the required rites of the monastic confession and so on have been performed with unity up to that point.

|यार:बया:र्श्वःव्राच्याः यशःग्रीःर्वेदःरे:देःदवेरःयःर्यःयाव्यःद्येःर्वाद्यःयथा र्याः

How many individuals are required for this type of schism? A split in the activities of the community requires no separate person to incite the division, so the deed can be accomplished **with** the **involvement of eight or more** full monks.

104
Details of a Schism, Concluded

|र्ट.म्.संस्थरःभ्रुषःबटःयोश्याःय| |

A breaking of the wheel never occurs At the beginning, the end, before the faults Or one of The Pair, after The Able passes, Until the residences set apart.

[IV.405-8]

पश्चिमः खेरिः मुन्दा अध्याः अप्ताः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः विद्यम् खेर्याः खेराः खेरा

Now a breaking of the wheel of the teachings as described above never occurs at "the beginning"—that is, during the period just after the Buddha has first set this wheel in motion. This is because at this point everyone shares a peculiar sense of unity, a perfect harmony born of communal joy.

त्राक्तिः स्त्रीत्राक्ष्यः स्त्रीत्र । स्त्राक्ष्यः स्त्राक्षः स्त्राक्यः स्त्राक्षः स्त्राक्रः स्त्राक्षः स्त्राक्षः स्त्राक्षः स्त्राक्षः स्त्राक्षः स्त्रा

Neither does the break ever occur at the end of the Buddha's precious life—when he passes into his final nirvana. This is because his followers at this point share exactly the same thoughts: a special awareness of how rare the Buddha is, and strong feelings of resignation with life once its impermanence has been drawn to their attention then.

वित्रस्त्रार्श्वर प्रमः होत्या धीत्।

Verses on Vowed Morality contains the following lines:

Instructions of the Teacher remain pure, Free of any breach for twelve years' time, Free from taint, like waters of the autumn, Working to remove the mental afflictions.

निश्चायन्त्रीत्त्रम् । यस्त्रम् सार्स्स्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् । विश्वायन्त्रम् । यस्त्रम् सार्स्स्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् । वस्त्रम् सार्स्स्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् । वस्त्रम् सार्म्स्त्रम् सार्वायम् सार्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम्

This means that a schism in the community will furthermore never happen **before** certain **faults** occur—faults in the way that followers view the teachings and maintain their morality. For until such time, the teachings themselves remain without defect.

। दे.र्या.योश्व.यर्शेश.र्योश.तः संस्था.यंदेरः हो। ये.य.लेश.रूटः श्रे.योश्व. संस्थः वेटः

Furthermore, no division can occur **before** the appearance of **one** or another **of The** Great **Pair.** This is because the division is of very brief duration and could not otherwise be brought to an end, since the reconciliation is always performed by one of these two.

No schism can occur **after The Able** One himself **passes** on (that is, subsequent to his final nirvana), since there is then no Buddha present for the leader of the schism to compete with.

अर्थभ्रम् के स्वीत्रः स्वीत्य

Finally, no division of the community can occur **until** such time as different monastic **residences**, both large and small, are **set apart** from each other. This is because divisions between the community of monks that occur within a single monastic institution do not qualify as a breaking of the wheel, although they are a type of schism. In summary then we can say that there are six periods during which it is impossible for a break in the wheel of the teachings to occur.

यूट्यात्मकातकरे.स् । ब्रम्यात्म श्रीयात्म श्

Now this schism is something that depends upon the past deeds of the disciples involved, so does not occur with every single Buddha. The explanation goes that, in a former birth as a bodhisattva, our own Teacher (the Leader of the Shakyas) created a schism among the followers of a certain great adept who possessed the five types of supernormal powers: the present schism is just the eventual ripening of this misdeed. According to the teachings for those of higher capacity though this description is not to be taken literally.

105 What Makes Deeds Immediate

As objects of assistance, qualities, Since you reject and also eliminate them.

[IV.409-10]

। इतः स्रीमः सः भाग्रेन्। सः भाग्येन्। सः भाग्येन्। भारत्येन्। भारत्येन

चैश्रायदुःस्त्रीर। यदुःश्वेद्राचिद्रायरःश्वरःत्रोद्राया देःयश्वश्चायशःश्चेदश्चायःद्रदः। श्चेंरःयशःश्चेद्रायरः द्याःयोश्चार्यरःयोःत्रुश्चायः द्रायश्चेत्रःयरःयश्चेत्रःयशः यद्रवाशःयरःचेदः।

One may ask the following: "Why is it considered an `immediate' misdeed only when a person performs one of the actions such as killing his father or mother? Why isn't it the same kind of deed when a person commits an act, such as the killing, towards someone else?" The answer is that killing one's father or mother is an "immediate" misdeed **as** they are very special **objects**, due to the great **assistance** they have rendered one: they have given you a body, a body with which you can attain freedom. And by thinking to kill them **you reject them;** by actually undertaking the deed, you **also eliminate them.**

र्नः प्रविष्ठः पुः न्याः पर्वेशः यः न्दः न्याः वर्ष्ठः न्दः श्राः श्राः स्वाः श्राः न्याः प्रविष्ठः प्रवि

The case with enemy destroyers, the community of monks, and Buddhas is similar. They are objects possessed of exceptional qualities; by thinking to do the particular deed towards them you reject them, and by actually undertaking the various deeds involved you create conditions which are not at all conducive to their continued life.

दे.चबुर्यात्यात्राहार्योद्यायराम्याहा

Here we should mention that, although it is impossible for anyone to actually kill a Buddha, the thought to do so is a rejection of the Buddha. Kinds of actions other than those described above are in no way as serious, so are not counted among the "immediate" misdeeds.

106 Clarification of Certain Immediate Misdeeds

।योट.यो.धः अक्ष्य.जन्नःचैट.न्ना ।अक्ष्य.बु.योषय.री.चीर.जीट.ज्यीरा

It is, even should the organ switch. Mother, the one whose menses he came from.

[IV.411-12]

सद्भान्यत्व स्थान्यत्व स्थान्य स्थान्यत्व स्यान्यत्य स्थान्यत्व स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्यत्य स्थान्य स्याप्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्याप्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्याप्य स्याप्य स्याप्य स्याप्य स्याप्य स्थान्य

One might ask the following question: "Suppose a person kills a father or mother whose sexual organ has changed. Is it still an `immediate' misdeed?" Even should the sexual organ of one's father or mother switch (and they thus become a female or a male, respectively), it is still the "immediate" deed of patricide or matricide if he kills them. This is because one has still killed the person who performed the function of a father or mother: the one who endowed him with his very special body.

One may then pose another question: "Suppose the embryo in one woman's body is removed and placed in the womb of another, and the child takes birth from this woman's womb. Killing which of these two women would constitute

the `immediate' misdeed?" The **mother** of the person in question is the former of the two women: **the one whose menses he came from.** Therefore killing this first woman would be the immediate misdeed; she played the principal role in providing the person a body fit for gaining freedom. We could not consider the second woman, the woman who kept the child in her womb, the child's mother—this act alone would not make hers the principal role.

Now it is not an "immediate" misdeed if a person undertakes to kill his father or mother and ends up killing someone else; nor is it if one undertakes to kill someone else and ends up killing one of his parents. This is because, with an "immediate" misdeed, the actual commission of the act must be concluded with the same person towards whom the act was undertaken. And this is true of neither of the cases mentioned. Similar examples would be where the person killed his mother by accident as she hid under his bed, or where the son of the washerman threw a rock to kill a fly and smashed his father's skull instead.

के. चर्च. क्षेत्र। भारत्येत्र, चर्चा चार्च्या, चार्च्य, चार्च्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्य, चार्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्या, चार्य, चार्या, चार्या,

Suppose that a person, in the single blow of some weapon, kills his mother and some other living being. The non-communicating form here consists of both deeds: the "immediate" misdeed and a simple act of killing. The communicating form though is subsumed only by the immediate deed, since an immediate deed possesses such tremendous force.

यायाः हे त्या प्रेयाः या प्रयाः प्रेयाः प्रयाः प्रेयाः प्रयाः प्रयः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रयाः प्रया

Next let's take a case where a person kills his father, a father who happens to be an enemy destroyer as well. Or suppose he kills a person who is both his mother and an enemy destroyer too. Here he commits a single "immediate" misdeed, that of killing an enemy destroyer—for only the single physical base of a person was involved.

स्त्री अर.क्ष्या ह्रिं स्त्राय हर्षे स्त्राय हर्षे स्त्री हर्षे स्त्री विक्रा स्त्री स्त्राय स्त्राय स्त्री स

One may ask how then we reconcile this position with the following message, quoted in *Divisions of the Word:*

In days gone by there was a king of Rauruka City by the name of Udrayana. He was murdered by his son Shikhandi, who thus killed a person who was both his father and an enemy destroyer. The King's last words to the assassins sent by his son were "Return and tell Shikhandi for me, 'You have now committed two immediate misdeeds—that of killing your father, and that of killing an enemy destroyer."

येश्वर्या के स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्

The point of the king's words was to tell his son that he had on two accounts committed an immediate misdeed, or that he had committed the deed in two different ways. There was though no more than one immediate misdeed done.

107 Misdeeds and the Holy

विद्र्क्ष्य्याय्याय्य्यायः श्रेष्यायः श्रेष्याः विद्र्याः स्वायः विद्र्याः स्वायः विद्र्यः स्वायः स्वायः स्वाय विद्र्यः स्वायः स्व

Not with a mind to strike the Buddha, not with An enemy destroyer after attack. Freed from desire, results, impossible For one who's undertaken immediate.

[IV.413-6]

द्रशः श्रीशः तस्रुवः पः तः वे तः त्यीरः श्री। स्वा वा वितः प्रदेशः प्रस्ता स्व वितः प्रदेशः प्रस्ता स्व वितः प पर्दे (विषयः प्रा विवायः पः तः प्रस्त स्व वितः प्रस्ता स्व वितः प्रस्त स्व वितः प्रस्त स्व वितः प्रस्त स्व वि । दे । प्रविवायः प्रा तः प्रस्त स्व विवायः प्रस्त स्व वितः प्रस्त स्व वितः प्रस्त स्व वितः प्रस्त स्व वितः प्र

Let's next consider the immediate misdeed of striking and drawing blood, with evil intent, from the One Thus Gone. It's considered the immediate misdeed when a person uses his weapon with the intent to kill the Buddha, but it is **not** considered this type of misdeed when a person uses his weapon simply **with a mind to strike the Buddha.** This is because such a person lacks the "intent" stage for an act of taking life.

Suppose for a similar example that someone uses a weapon against a person who has yet to reach the stage of "enemy destroyer," and then at some point after the attack the victim does attain this level. Suppose further that our new enemy destroyer then dies as a result of wounds incurred in the original attack. It is **not** considered the immediate misdeed with such a person, for his attacker did not undertake the action against someone who was an enemy destroyer.

द्यः श्री नर्षेषः त्याः वर्षेषः तः त्याः वर्षेषः तः वर्षेषः वर्षः वर्षेषः वर्षेषः

हुत्वायः प्रश्ना देशःहेतः देशःश्चिरः प्रश्ना स्वायः प्रश्नी प्रमायः स्वेतः प्रश्नी प्रमायः प्रश्नी स्वयः स्

One may pose the following question: "Suppose a person undertakes to commit an immediate misdeed. Is it possible for such a person—without abandoning this course of action—to achieve the state where he is free of desire, or to gain one of the results?" The answer is that it is **impossible for one who has undertaken** an **immediate** misdeed to gain either the level where he is **freed from desire** or one of the **results**. The two states of mind are completely contradictory.

108 Severity of Immediate Misdeeds

।८म्। त्र्रम् ५ ही स्थितः ह्या ह्या । । त्रायाः स्थाने स्थाने स्थाने स्थाने ।

Lying to divide the community Accepted as most heinous of misdeeds.

[IV.417-18]

One may ask, "Which of all these immediate misdeeds is the most serious?" Lying in order to divide the community of monks into two parts is accepted as the most heinous of misdeeds among all the immediate. This is because a person has thereby struck a blow to what is known as the "reality body" of the One Thus Gone. And as long as the community remains unreconciled, there is a general stop in the world to certain great virtuous deeds: no one finds the true certainty, no one achieves the results, no one gains freedom from desire, and no one brings an end to all stains.

चिश्रायदेः द्वीरार्ग्याचार्यरात्रां क्राञ्चीयायादेवा पुरस्य स्वर्था यादे स्वर्धा स्वर्था स्वर्धा स्वर्धा स्वर्धा स्वर्धा स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य

Moreover, such a division prevents persons from engaging in meditative concentration, and from reading scripture—from daily recitations and from contemplations. This then interrupts progress in gaining both higher births and the states of nirvana and Buddhahood. All the inhabitants of the world, on up to the great pleasure beings, are thrown into turmoil—they lose their happiness, they lose their freedom, they lose their ability to think. And the perpetrator must take his birth in the lowest hell, Without Respite, for an eon. These are what make this deed the worst.

नितःह्रभायान्ध्रेयपान्। नेतःह्रभायाम्बुभायान्दा। नेतःह्रभायान्दार्धान्दा। नेतःह्रभायान्ध्रयान्दा। नेतःह्रभायाम्बुभायान्दा। नेतःह्रभायान्दार्धान्दा।

The next most grave of the immediate misdeeds is the fifth; then come the third, the first, and second—in that order. Thus the murder of one's father is explained as the least serious of the five.

यर यभ्रेतार् श्रीत स्था क्रमायाश्रुमायी द्रमा श्रीत यी स्थायी स्

One may object that this description contradicts the statement in sutra that, of all the three types of wrong, the three deeds of thought are most serious and that—within these three—holding mistaken views is most grave. There is though no inconsistency here. The misdeed we've described leads one to the hell "Without Respite" for a full intermediate eon; from the viewpoint of the magnitude of the result that ripens from the deed, we can say that dividing the community is the most serious of all the immediate misdeeds.

इर-ब्रॅट-क्री-जिर्म्या वर्गाव्यका श्री-क्रिया वर्षेत्र प्रक्षेत्र प्रक्

One the other hand there is the case where the raw emotion of fury in the mind of the great adept brought death to the many individuals of Dantaka Monastery and other places; we can say then that, with respect to the general result of death among the populace, actions of the thought are the most powerful among three groups of deeds that relate to the three passageways.

मुक्तान्त्रान्त्रित्त्वरात्त्रान्त्रत्त्रान्त्रान्त्

And with respect to the "creative" result of losing one's most basic virtue, mistaken views would be the most serious of the deeds of the thought, for the others in this group lack the power to make one lose this virtue. To express it in a different way, we can say that each was stated to be the most serious: dividing the community, deeds of the thought, and holding mistaken views—but only with the respective assumptions that one is limiting himself to the five immediate deeds, deeds of the three passageways, or the five views.

The Asian Classics Institute Course V: How Karma Works

Reading Ten: The Relative Severity of Deeds and What Causes It

मिलायान्यो प्रत्याच्या । स्थिताया स्थिताय स्थिताया स्थिताय स्थिताया स्थाया स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थिताया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थायाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थायाया स्थायाया स्थायाया स्थायाया स्थायाया स्थायाया स्थायाया

The following selections are from the First Dalai Lama's commentary to the *Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha)*, entitled *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*. They include the root text of Master Vasubandhu.

116
The Meritorious Act of Giving

विद्यमार्थेदमार्थेदमा विद्यमार्थेदमार्थेदमा विद्यमार्थेदमार्थेदमा विद्यमार्थेदमार्थेदमा विद्यमार्थेदमार्थेदमार्थे

Giving is when anyone acts to give, Out of a wish to honor or to aid. Deeds of body and speech with motive, linked; Its result, possession of great wealth.

[IV.449-52]

इट्रा क्षेट्र के स्प्राप्त स्थित। इट्र क्षेट्र के स्प्राप्त स्थित।

Now among these three, **giving** is described as follows. It **is when any** person, with thoughts of virtue, **acts to give** any thing he owns to someone else. As we read in *A Sutra Taught at the Request of Vyasa, a Great Adept:* "Oh great adept, all acts of giving even the smallest thing from faith are Giving."

As for the motivation involved, it is only the meritorious act of giving when one gives away the thing either **out of a wish to honor** (some very high object) **or** out of a wish **to aid** (some very miserable object). It is not real giving when one does so only out of fear, or out of hopes of getting something in return, and so on.

लियादी । भ्रिन्यादेव त्याया वी त्याया मुन्या स्वार्थ त्या स्वित्य स्वार्थ । विश्व स्वार्थ त्याया विश्व स्वार्थ विश्व स्वार्थ । विश्व स्वार्थ स्वार्थ

Giving moreover consists of **deeds of body and speech** along **with** their **motivation** and what is **linked** with it mentally. The **result** of the giving is the **possession of great wealth**, at least for the time being.

117
Giving that Benefits the Other,
and the Rest

।यन्यायालमः र्ने मः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः। ।याक्षेत्रः यात्रः र्ने मः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः।

Giving is that which benefits oneself, The other, both, and neither one of them.

[IV.453-4]

हेब.ज. ब्रैंब.त्र्। चवर्षा श्रु.श्रु.च्.वह्या.हेब.तदु.जश्र.चेंट्र.क्याश.टट.चेज.चश्र.श्रुट्र.

As for the different divisions of **giving**, the first **is that** giving **which benefits oneself**. This would be for a person who had not yet freed himself from desire for desire-realm objects, or for a common person who had done so but through the "path of the world," to make offerings to a shrine.

त्र्र्। वर्ट्र-क्रयाश्च-द्र-च्रिय-पश्च-द्र्-क्रयाश-द्र-क्रयाश-द्र-अःच्रय-प्रतेश-अञ्च-प्राव्य-यःश्चेत-वर्ट्र-क्रयाश-द्र-च्रिय-पश्चित-अञ्चर-क्रिय-यःश्च-याव्य-यःश्चेत-वर्ष्

Giving that benefits **the other** would be any act of giving performed by a realized person free of desire towards another living being not so freed. This assumes by the way that we do not consider any results that the former individual will experience in this same life.

यावनःयान्त्रेन्नः स्त्रीतः स्त्रीनः स्त्रीनः यान्यः यान्य

Giving that benefits **both** would be for a realized being who was not yet free of desire, or for a common being who was not thus free, to present something to another living being who was not yet free from desire either.

Giving that benefits **neither** would be for a realized being who was free of desire for the desire realm to make offerings to a shrine. This is because the only point of the offering is for this being to express his deep respect and gratitude. Here again incidentally we are not counting any results of the offering that he will achieve in the same life.

118
Exceptional Types of Givers

१२.८०.१८२.१८२.१८८१ १२.८०.१८२.१८८१ १३८.१८८१८८५८ १३८.१८८१८८८ १३८.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८ १२.८०.१८८८८ १२.८०.१८८८

Exceptional types of it from exceptional Givers, given thing, whom given; of these the Giver's exceptional through faith and the rest, Performs his giving with respect and the like. As a result one gains the honor, a wealthy, The timely and a freedom from hindrances.

[IV.455-60]

Very **exceptional types of "it"**—of this giving, come **from** exceptional kinds of **givers**, exceptional kinds of **things** which are **given**, and exceptional kinds of objects to **whom** the things are **given**. **Of these**, **the giver is** made **exceptional through** a motivation of **faith and "the rest"**—which refers first of all to the rest of the "seven riches of realized beings": morality, generosity, learning, a sense of shame, a conscience, and wisdom. The phrase also refers to having little desire for things.

As for how he undertakes the act, the exceptional giver **performs his giving** (1) **with** an attitude of **respect and "the like."** These last words refer to handing the object to the other person with one's own hands; (2) giving something when it is really needed; and (3) performing the actual deed in a way that does no harm to anyone else. Examples would be where one had stolen the object from someone else in the first place, or where one presented a sheep to a butcher. Included here too are cases where the object given hurt the recipient—examples would be giving someone poison or unhealthy food.

पर्व।

पर्वा विकास्य के स्वा का स्व का स्व

Concerning the consequences of such giving, the person has performed his charity with an attitude of respect and so on, as listed above. **As a result he gains** the following (and here the list follows the three numbers above). In his future life he wins (1) **the honor** and respect of those who follow him, as well as a **wealth** of material things (which because of his former faith he enjoys at his total discretion). In this next life he also gains (2) the **timely** fulfillment of his own needs, as well as (3) complete **freedom from any hindrances** to his wealth: enemies, loss of his things in a fire, and so on.

119
Exceptional Things to Give

|र्नुसःसुःरेम्|स्यरेन्सुसःस्युः |र्ने:प्यसःम्ब्रम्सःम्बर्नःप्रम्यःस्यःर्नः। |र्ने:प्यसःम्ब्रम्सःम्बर्नःप्रम्यःस्यःर्नः। |र्न्यःर्नेम्:स्यरेन्स्यःस्युःसःस्य

Things given, excellent color and such. From it an excellent form and reputation, Happiness and a very youthful complexion, A body which in each time's pleasant to touch.

[IV.461-4]

त्राचिर्त्यात्रर्भ्यात्रात्रत्र्यात्र्यः यद्भेष्यः यद्भेष्यः स्ट्रिस्यः स्ट्रिस्य

An **excellent color "and such"**—which refers to an excellent smell, or taste, or feel—are what make **things** that are **given** exceptional.

यामित्र्वास्त्रम्भुक्षः र्क्ष्वास्य मुक्षः स्वाद्यान्य स्वाद्यः स्वादः स्वतः स्वादः स्वतः स्वादः स्वादः

From "it" (that is, from giving things with an excellent color), one gains an excellent bodily form—at least for the time being. Temporarily too he gains other results (following the order of the qualities just listed): a good and widespread reputation; great happiness; and a body with a very youthful complexion. The body that one possesses is moreover like that which belongs to the "jewel of the queen": it is pleasant to touch in each of the times—whether the temperature is just normal, or whether it is cold (when the queen's body gives you warmth), or hot (at which time the queen feels to you cool).

120 Exceptional Objects to Give a Gift

प्रिक्तिन्द्रस्थान्यस्थाः स्वतः वर्ष्यायाः । स्वितः द्रिक्तः स्वयः स्वय

Exceptional—those you give to—by the being, Suffering, aid, and by good qualities. The highest someone freed by someone freed, By a bodhisattva, or the eighth. Gifts made to a father or a mother, To the sick, a spiritual teacher, or A bodhisattva in his final life Cannot be measured, even not realized.

[IV.465-72]

Those to whom **you give** a gift can be **exceptional** by virtue of four different reasons, first **by the** type of **being** involved. As *Gautami's Sutra* states,

Ananda, you can look forward to a hundredfold result ripening back to you, if you give something to an individual who has reached the animal's state of birth. But you can look forward to a thousandfold result if you give something even to a human who's immoral.

यशिरश्राताक्षेत्री स्वीया प्रकृता प्रकृता प्रकृता प्रकृता स्वा प्रकृता प्रकृत प्रकृता प्रकृत प्रकृ

The object towards whom you perform your giving may also be distinguished by his **suffering.** Suppose for example that you take all the things that a person can give in one of those types of acts where the merit derives from a substantial thing. It is stated that if you give these things to a sick person, or to someone nursing a sick person, or to someone when it's cold outside or whatever, the merit is immeasurable.

यदे श्रुक्षास्यकात्वे त्याकायायाव्यक्ष व्याप्त स्वर्धः हो । देवा स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वरं स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वरं

The recipient may furthermore be distinguished by the **aid** he has given one in the past. Here we include one's father and mother, or anyone else who has been of special help to one. Examples may be found among stories of the Buddha's former lives, such as the one about the bear and the *ru-ru* deer.

दस्याक्षाक्ष्र्।
विकासक्षर्यक्ष्र्यः विकासक्ष्र्यः विकासक्ष्र्यः विकासक्ष्र्यः विकासक्ष्रः विकासक्षरः विकासक्षयः विकासक्षरः विकासक्

The person to whom one gives his gift may, lastly, be exceptional **by** virtue of his **good qualities.** *Gautami's Sutra* provides some examples:

If you give to someone who has kept his morality, you can expect it to ripen into a result a hundred thousand times as great. If you give to someone who has entered that stage known as the "result of entering the stream," it ripens into something which is immeasurable. And if you give even more to someone who has entered the stream, the result is even more immeasurable.

यशिर्यास्।

क्यानाचितात्मास्यात्मान्याः चित्रान्त्राच्याः चित्राच्याः चित्राचयः चित्राच्याः चित

Now **the highest** kind of giving is for **someone** who has **freed** himself of the three realms to give something to **someone** else who has **freed** himself as well. This is because both are the highest kind of individual. Again we see, in *Gautami's Sutra*,

The highest form of giving a physical thing Is by one free to another free of desire: But one with his body and speech restrained, Reaching out his hand to offer food.

वस्रमः उन्गीः सर्ग्ने न्यः क्षेत्रः प्रदेः श्चेतः प्रस्ति । स्वान्यः प्रस्ति । सर्ग्यः प्रस्ति । सर्ग्यः प्रस् स्वान्यः स्वेतः प्रमानः क्षेत्रश्चेतः प्रस्ति । सर्ग्यः । सर्ग्यः प्रस्ति । सर्ग्यः । सर्यः ।

We can also though take a giver who is a **bodhisattva** and who gives any object at all, for the sake of helping every being alive. Although this is an act of giving by a person who is not yet freed and is directed to another person not yet freed, it is still the highest kind of giving. This is because the act has been performed for the sake of total enlightenment and every living being.

And this is because one has given something in order to become the savior of every single being.

स्यायम् अभ्याण्ये क्रियायाञ्चे स्याप्त स्थायम् विष्णा क्रियाया क्षेत्र स्याप्त स्याप्

Now a certain sutra gives the following list of eight types of giving:

- 1) Giving to close ones;
- 2) Giving out of fear;
- 3) Giving because they gave to you;
- 4) Giving because they will give to you;
- 5) Giving because one's parents and ancestors used to give;
- 6) Giving with the hope of attaining one of the higher births;
- 7) Giving to gain fame;
- 8) Giving to gain the jewel of the mind, to gain the riches of the mind, to win what great practitioners collect together, to achieve the ultimate goal.

द्वीर-ब्रीय-तः अक्र्या-म् बिश-ब्रीय-तः अक्र्या-म्

We can alternately describe the highest type of giving as **the eighth** in this list: giving to gain the jewel of the mind and so on.

श्रमानु स्वार्या स्त्रीत्र स्वार्या हुति स्वार्या विष्या हुत्य स्वार्या विष्या हुत्य स्वार्या स्वार्या स्वार्य स्वार्

वर्रेशः र्रेवः वर्षाः वः त्रैवः वें स्त्रुधः वशः स्रेवः पर्वा

As for the meaning of the expression "giving to close ones," certain masters of the past have claimed that it refers to giving to someone when they are standing close by, or to someone when they approach close by. "Giving out of fear" means that a person decides he will give the best he has, but only because he perceives some great imminent danger to himself. And "giving because they gave to you" refers to giving something to a person with the thought that "I'm doing this because he gave me something before."

र्श्वाचीर्ट्स्। न्याचीरमञ्ज्ञान्त्र्यान्त्यान्यान्त्र्यान्यान्त्र्यान्यान्त्र्यान्यान्यान्त्र्यान्यान्त्र्यान

The remaining members of the list are easily understood. "Jewel of the mind" refers to the ability to perform miracles, while "riches of the mind" refers to the eight parts of the path of realized beings. "What great practitioners collect together" refers to perfectly tranquil concentration and special realization. The "ultimate goal" can be described as achieving the state of an enemy destroyer, or the state of nirvana. This is how the Master Jinaputra explains the various types of giving.

यो.यरे.य.श्रेर.त.रेटा श्री.ट्रं त्याका.वर्षात.वर्षेत्रत्या.क्षेत्रा क्षेत्रका.व्ह्या. श्र्याका.तयु.ब्र्र्र.वर्षेत्रत.रेटा श्रुर.क्षेत्र.ट्रे.का.रेटा.वयोता.य.रेटा श्र्र्याका.वहियो. विष्टःश्रिता.क्षेत्र.वर्षेत्र.वर्षेत्र.व्याका.वर्षेत्र.क्षेत्र.क्षेत्र.व्यावा.वर्षेत्र र्

Master Purna explains them as follows:

Giving to gain the "jewel of the mind" and the rest of the four refers respectively to (1) that which brings one the riches of faith and the rest; (2) that which is totally inconsistent with the stink of stinginess; (3) that which makes the happiness of balanced meditation grow; and (4) that which brings on the state of nirvana. र्रा भारयाश्वारी श्रेंशायशायरा श्रेंशायशायरा श्रेंशायशायात्रीत्रायश्वा श्रेंशायशायर्द्र भक्षरायशादरा श्रेंशायशादरा श्रेरायदशायशा श्रेंशायश्वेंशायर्द्र । श्रिरायद्वारायेंश्वेंशायशादरा श्रेंशायशायर्द्र । श्रिरायद्वारायेंश्वेंशायशायर्द्र

These four have also been accepted as relating respectively to the four "results of the way of virtue," or to (1) the paths of collection and preparation, (2) the path of seeing, (3) the path of habituation, and (4) nirvana. An alternate way is to correlate them with (1) the paths of collection and preparation, (2) the seven impure levels, (3) the three pure levels, and (4) the level of a Buddha.

सैयायद्गयस्त्रीयस्त्रीयः वर्षे स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्य

Beyond the above, we can say that there are other acts of giving where, **even** though the recipient is **not** a **realized** being, the resulting merit still **cannot be measured** in units such as a "hundred thousand times greater" or such. These would involve **gifts made to** one's **father or mother** (recipients who had given one great aid), **to the sick** (recipients who are in a state of suffering), to **a spiritual teacher**, **or** to a bodhisattva in his final life.

यश्चर्यं अश्वराम् वाश्चर्यायः वाश्चर्यायः विष्ट्रायः विष्ट्रायः विश्वरायः विश्वरयः विश्वरायः विश्वरायः विश्वरयः विश्वरयः विश्वरयः विश्वरयः विश्वरयः विश्वरय

Support for this description can be found in the *Sutra on Causes and Effect of Right and Wrong*, which equates the merit of giving to these objects with the amount of merit you collect from giving something to the Buddha himself:

Moreover, the act of giving performed towards any one of the three different kinds of individuals ripens into a result which never reaches an end at all. These objects are the One Thus Gone, a person's parents, and the sick.

121
Severity of Deeds
according to Six Factors

|अड्या:८८:वि८:८८:यावि:८८:वी |र्बेड्र.८८:बेअब:य:यबअ:य:ब्रे| |९:८या:कु८:८८:के:य:यबा |यब:गु८:कु८:८८:के:य:वे८|

Conclusion, one who's acted toward, commission; Undertaking, thinking, and intention: The power of the deed itself's exactly As little or great as these happen to be.

[IV.473-6]

ताः क्रीयः प्रे. त्री यह्याः प्रे. त्रायः क्रे. त्रायः क्रे. त्रायः क्रे. त्रायः क्रे. त्रायः क्रे. त्रायः क्र

Here we might touch by the way on what determines how serious a given deed will be. The first factor that can make a deed serious is what we call "performance in **conclusion**," which means to continue a particular act well after the original course of action.

। ब्रॅ्यामार्ट्र-पवर क्रेन्यं स्वर्धि प्राप्त प्रिन्यो प्राप्त स्वर्धि स्वर्या स्वर्धि स्वर्धि स्वर्धि स्वर्धि स्वर्धि स्वर्धि स्वर्धि स्वर्ध

र्थतः विश्वश्चा । तर्वराक्षेत्रयात् । विश्वराद्यः यात्रेत्रः यवियाः यश्चरः देत्। रुषः विश्वश्चा । वर्षेत्रः वे त्यसः यात्रव्याः यश्चरः यवियाः यश्चरः देत्।

The **one who's acted toward** in any particular deed—someone who may have lent one great aid in the past—is also a factor in making the deed a serious one. Deeds which are more serious because of the basic type involved in the actual **commission** of the act would include cases like killing (among the different deeds of the body), lying (among the deeds of speech), and mistaken views (among the deeds of thought). Even among the different types of killing there are those which are more serious—killing an enemy destroyer, for example—because as *Close Recollection* states,

...it leads one to the lowest hell, "Without Respite." A less serious type of killing would be to take the life of a person who had reached any of the paths. And the least serious type would be to kill an animal, or a very immoral person.

के.य.क्री इंयाबात्तर मुद्देश्यकाराके.य.दटा यब्बबातबाके.य.देश्यकारा इंयाबातर मुद्देश्यकाराके.य.दटा यब्बबातबाके.य.देश्यकारा के.य.क्री

Deeds made serious by the stage of their preliminary **undertaking** would be those which involved actually applying oneself physically or verbally. Deeds made serious by the **thinking** involved would be those where one's thoughts in carrying out the act were particularly strong. And deeds which turn more serious because of the **intention** involved would be those where one undertakes an act with particularly strong thoughts of motivation.

द्री यः प्रमः त्रमह्रमः यः क्षेत्रः द्री । इस्रः यः द्वमः मः क्षेत्रः तः क्षेत्रः तः क्षेत्रः तः क्षेत्रः विश् वः प्रमः त्रमह्रमः यः क्षेत्रः द्री । इस्रः यः द्वमः मः क्षेत्रः तः क्षेत्रः तः क्षेत्रः त्रक्षः व्यव्याः व्यव

We can summarize by saying that the power of the deed itself is exactly as little or great as these six factors of conclusion and the rest happen to be in their own force. One should understand that deeds where all six factors are present in force are extremely serious.

122 Whether Deeds are Collected or Not

| प्रथमश्चायद्वः त्यशः विशः चुः चः ध्येत् । | तिर्वितः प्रदः क्ष्यः प्रश्चेतः प्रः प्रदः । | प्रश्चेत् । याष्ट्रेत् । याष

A deed is called "collected" from its being Done intentionally, to its completion, Without regret, without a counteraction, With attendants, ripening as well.

[IV.477-80]

स्यानायान्यस्य । दे.रया.ह.कं.ये.ब्र.या जन्ययीनायान्या । जन्यस्यानायान्यस्य

Now sutra also mentions a number of concepts including "deeds which are done and also collected" as well as "deeds which are done but which are not collected." One may ask just what these are.

A deed is called "done and also *collected*" from its being done with six different conditions, described as follows:

1) The deed must be done **intentionally**; that is, it cannot have been performed without premeditation, or simply on the spur of the moment.

- 2) It must have been done "to its completion"—meaning with all the various elements of a complete deed present.
- 3) The person who committed the deed must feel **no** regret later on.
- 4) There must be **no counteraction** to work against the force of the deed.
- 5) The deed must come along with the necessary attendants.
- 6) The deed must **as well** be one of those where one is certain to experience the **ripening** of a result in the future.

ताश्चार्यक्षः सार्वः । योद्धेश्वः योद्धेश्वः योद्धेशः यो

Deeds other than the type described are what we call "done but not collected." From this one can understand what kinds of deeds are meant by the expressions "collected but not done" and "neither done nor collected."

|दे.ज.ह्म्यामान्यत्ते,जमान्यत्त्र्यात्त्रः क्षेत्रः मुद्दः द्वाः त्यत्त्रः त्यत्ते, त्यत्त्रः त्यत्ते, त्यत्ते

As for the phrase "to its completion," in some cases a single act of right or wrong leads one to a birth in the states of misery or to a birth in the happier states. In other cases, all ten deeds of all three doors lead a person to the appropriate one of these two births. In either case the deeds have been done to their completion.

यात्राञ्चारायात्रेत्वात्यात्रात्वात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्या । यात्रेत्रात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्यात्रात्य

The phrase "without a counteraction" refers to deeds done (1) with mistaken ideas, misgivings, or the like; (2) without confession, future restraint, or such.

A deed "along with its necessary attendants" means a deed of virtue or non-virtue along with attendants of further virtue or non-virtue. Admittedly, the *Commentary* does explains these as "Any deed which you rejoice about having done." Nonetheless the attendants here are the preliminary undertaking and final conclusion stages of the deed.

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	INSTITUTE

COURSE V How Karma Works

(5)

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class One
1) Name the main root text for the study of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma); give the author's name and his dates. Then give the name of the main commentary we will be using, the author and his dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
2) Explain the literal meaning of the words in the title of the root text.
3) List the eight chapters of the root text (Tibetan track in Tibetan), and explain their interrelation.
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)

(6)
(7)
(8)
4) What things does the word "abhidharma" actually refer to? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
5) Name the four required attributes of a reputable Buddhist book, and explain what they are in this case. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan and explain in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
Memorization assignment: Memorize the four lines from the Abhidharmakosha starting

Course V, Class One, Homework, cont.

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day analytical meditation on the four attributes. *Meditation dates and times (homework without these will not be accepted):*

with "Knowledge is unstained wisdom..."

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	INSTITUTE

COURSE V How Karma Works

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Two

1) The opening line of the fourth chapter of the Abhidharmakosha (Treasure	e House of
<i>Knowledge</i>) explains where the universe and all the beings in it come from.	Write the
line out. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)	

2) With this line, Master Vasubandhu is denying that the world can come from no cause at all, or from a cause inconsistent with its nature. Examples of the latter would be an unchanging cause, a primal energy, or a creator being. (Tibetan track name these three in Tibetan.) Give two reasons why the world cannot come from them.

a)

b)

3) Name the two most basic types of karma, or deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

4) The two types of karma motivated by mind are deeds of body and of speech. Describe the two types that each of these has, giving an example of each. (Tibetan track give the two types in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
5) "Non-communicating" form has five characteristics. Describe them, by using the exact phrases from Master Vasubandhu's root text, and explaining each of them. (Tibetan track give each phrase in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
Memorization assignment: Memorize the first five lines of the fourth chapter of the
Abhidharmakosha. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on why the world and its inhabitants did not come from the three "causes" mentioned above.
Meditation dates and times (homework without these will not be accepted):



COURSE V How Karma Works

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Three
1) Give the definitions of virtue, non-virtue, and neutral karma. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
2) Name the three root virtuous mental functions and describe them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
3) Give the Tibetan words for shame and consideration, and explain the difference between them. (Tibetan track give words in Tibetan and explain in English.)
a)
b)

4) Give the gateways.	e abbreviated list of the ten (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)	rights and	wrongs,	and group	them by	the three
(1)						
(2)						
(3)						
(4)						
(5)						
(6)						
(7)						
(8)						
(9)						
(10)						
Memorizati	on assignment: Memorize th	e ten rights	s and wro	ongs by gat	eway.	

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, about the closest you came in the last 24

hours to each one of the ten rights and wrongs.



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Four
1) Name the three types of experiences (in three different times) that ripen from deeds (karma).
a)
b)
c)
2) What are the four types of deeds that, according to the Abhidharma, will definitely ripen into a future experience?
a)
b)
c)
d)
3) What are the two special features of a deed that can cause it to ripen in this same life?
a)
b)

4) What four things can make the object of an action "special"?
a)
b)
c)
d)
5) Name and describe the four different types of consequences that result from a karmic action.
a)
b)
c)
d)
6) Select three bad deeds, one representing each of the gateways, and explain the four consequences it will produce.
a) in body:
i)
ii)
iii)
iv)

b) in s	peech:
	i)
	ii)
	iii)
	iv)
c) in n	nind:
	i)
	ii)
	iii)
	iv)
Memorization Meditation as	assignment: In English, all three consequences for all ten deeds. signment: 15 minutes per day, analytical mediation on what kinds of karma the best and the worst things in your life may have come from.

Meditation dates and times (homework without these will not be accepted):

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Five
1) According to the Mind-Only school, when you see something, it is because two things arise together from one karmic seed that has been planted in the mind at an earlier time. Name these two things. (Tibetan track give them in Tibetan, and give the name for "Mind-Only School" as well.)
a)
b)
2) According to the Mind-Only School, what are you really looking at when you think you are looking at the sense faculty of your eye, and outside physical forms as well? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)
3) Explain how mental seeds from karma are planted, and then where they stay, and how they go on until they produce their consequences, according to the Mind-Only School. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "mental seed.")
a)
b)
c)

4) The Middle-Way School doesn't accept the idea of a foundation consciousness (<i>kungzhi</i> in Tibetan, or <i>alaya vijnyana</i> in Sanskrit). Where then do they say the mental seeds planted by karma stay until they ripen?
5) Even though the Consequence group in the Middle-Way School doesn't accept the idea of mental appearances ripening out of foundation consciousness, they do agree that mind helps create objects, through the process of conceptualization. Give the short name for this process (Tibetan track in Tibetan), and explain it.
6) There are many places in the sutras where the Buddha stated that the whole universe and everyone in it is "mind only." The Mind-Only School took this to mean that there are no outer, physical objects at all. Explain what two things the Buddha actually had in mind when He said that everything was "mind only."
a)
b)
Memorization assignment: Memorize the famous verse from the Sutra Requested by Upali, found in the reading for this class which begins, "A splash of pleasing flowers in breathtaking beauty." Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day; try to distinguish the difference between the role of mind in creating the world according to the Mind-Only School and the Middle-Way School. Meditation dates and times (homework without these will not be accepted):

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	INSTITUTE

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Six
1) Maitreya, in his work entitled <i>The Higher Line</i> , describes six different steps in the process through which the tendency to grasp to some self-nature causes karma, and thus the world of suffering life. Describe these six. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
2) When three different types of beings sit down together and look at a glass full of liquid, they see three different things. Does this mean then that nothing at all is one way or the other?

3) Is it possible that the three beings have three perceptions which are all valid, and yet draw contradictory conclusions about a single object?

4) Describe how the Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explain what is happening in this case, using their concept of three parts, three material causes, and three contributing factors.
5) What happens to the three parts when, for example, a craving spirit tries to drink from the glass?
6) Are the pus and blood that the craving spirit sees in the cup actual pus and blood? Why or why not?
Memorization assignment: Memorize the lines from the Bodhisattva's Way of Life found in this reading for this class which begins, "Who made the burning steel that acts." Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, a review meditation on the six steps that cause karma and our suffering life. Meditation dates and times (homework without these will not be accepted):

1	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Seven
1) Describe the difference between black, white, and black-and-white deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
2) Name and describe the four parts to a path of action, for the act of killing for example, as explained by Je Tsongkapa, who follows Master Asanga.
a)
b)
c)
d)
3) The second of these four part has three parts of its own. Name and describe these for the act of killing.
a)
b)
c)

4) Suppose someone is engaged in the support of a war by his country. He is not a soldier, but soldiers from his country kill some of the enemy. Does he himself collect the karma of killing, or not? (Use an actual verse quotation, Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
5) Give examples for the following (Tibetan track in Tibetan):
a) Something which is a karma but not a path of karma:
b) Something which is both a karma and a path of karma:
c) Something which is a path of karma but not a karma:
Memorization assignment: Memorize the verses from the Abhidharmakosha about the four root and six secondary non-virtues Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, on the closest you have come to the ten non-virtues and their opposites, in the last 24 hours Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

1	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Eight
1) What does "most basic virtue" or "root of virtue" refer to? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for this phrase, and for what it refers to.)
2) Describe the kind of person who can lose this most basic virtue. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "loss of basic virtue.")
3) Describe two actions which can cause a loss of basic virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)

4) Name two methods given in the Abhidharma for restoring most basic virtue. (Tibetat track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
5) Give examples of the four permutations between projecting and finishing types of karma. (Tibetan track give the names for these two types of karma in Tibetan.)
a)
1.)
b)
c)
d)
Memorization assignment: Memorize the six lines in section 80 of the Abhidharm commentary of His Holiness the First Dalai Lama.
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day on the closest you have ever come to losing your most basic virtue.
Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Course V How Karma Works

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Nine
1) Name the five "immediate" misdeeds in their traditional order. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
2) Why are these deeds called "immediate"? Describe also the specific type of birth that one must take because of them. (Tibetan track answer both parts in Tibetan.)
3) Describe the profile of a person who creates the kind of schism called "breaking the wheel," and the people who participate.

4) Name the six periods when such a schism is impossible. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
5) What makes a misdeed "immediate"?
6) Explain the order of severity for the five immediate misdeeds.
7) Which deeds of the three passageways are most serious? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
8) Which of the five views is most serious? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
Memorization assignment: Memorize the four lines of root verse in sections 105 and 108. Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day on the closest you have ever come and could ever come to committing one of the five "immediate" misdeeds.

Meditation dates and times (homework without these will not be accepted):

*	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Ten
1) Name and describe the four types of giving outlined in the <i>Treasure House of Knowledge</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) List the seven qualities that make a person who performs giving an exceptional type of giver. What is the name of the seven together? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
g)

3) Describe three qualities that make the actual action of giving exceptional.
a)
b)
c)
4) Name four qualities of the person to whom you perform your exceptional giving, giving examples for each.
a)
b)
c)
d)
5) The Abhidharma describes the difference between a deed which is committed and a deed which is collected. List the six conditions that cause a deed to be collected as well as committed. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
Memorization assignment: Memorize the verse for section 122 in the reading. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, choose one good and one bad deed you have done, and check whether the six conditions for being collected are complete or not.
Dates and times meditated (homework without these will not be accepted):

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class One
1) Name the main root text for the study of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma); give the author's name and his dates. Then give the name of the main commentary we will be using, the author and his dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
2) Explain the literal meaning of the words in the title of the root text.
3) What things does the word "abhidharma" actually refer to? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
4) Name the four required attributes of a reputable Buddhist book, and explain what they are in this case. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan and explain in English.) a)
b)
c)
d)

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Two
1) With the opening line of the first chapter of the <i>Abhidharmakosha (Treasure House of Knowledge)</i> , Master Vasubandhu is denying that the world can come from no cause at all, or from a cause inconsistent with its nature. Examples of the latter would be an unchanging cause, a primal energy, or a creator being. (Tibetan track name these three in Tibetan.) Give two reasons why the world cannot come from them.
a)
b)
2) Name the two most basic types of karma, or deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
3) "Non-communicating" form has five characteristics. Describe them, by using the exact phrases from Master Vasubandhu's root text, and explaining each of them. (Tibetan track give each phrase in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)

4	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Three
1) Give the definitions of virtue, non-virtue, and neutral karma. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
2) Give the Tibetan words for shame and consideration, and explain the difference between them. (Tibetan track give words in Tibetan and explain in English.)
a)
b)
3) Give the abbreviated list of the ten rights and wrongs, and group them by the three gateways. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)

Δ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	INSTITUTE

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Four
1) Name the three types of experiences (in three different times) that ripen from deeds (karma).
a)
b)
c)
2) What are the four types of deeds that, according to the Abhidharma, will definitely ripen into a future experience?
a)
1.)
b)
c)
d)

iv)

3) Select three consequences	bad deeds, one representing each of the gateways, and explain the for it will produce.	ır
a) in boo	dy:	
i))	
ii	i)	
ii	ii)	
iv	v)	
b) in spe	eech:	
i))	
ii	i)	
ii	ii)	
iv	v)	
c) in mi	nd:	
i))	
ii	i)	
ii	ii)	

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:		
Date:		
Grade:		

Quiz, Class Five

1) According to the Mind-Only School, what are you really looking at when you think you are looking at the sense faculty of your eye, and outside physical forms as well? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

2) Explain how mental seeds from karma are planted, and then where they stay, and how they go on until they produce their consequences, according to the Mind-Only School. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "mental seed.")

a)

b)

c)

3) The Middle-Way School doesn't accept the idea of a foundation consciousness (*kungzhi* in Tibetan, or *alaya vijnyana* in Sanskrit). Where then do they say the mental seeds planted by karma stay until they ripen?

4) Even though the Consequence group in the Middle-Way School doesn't accept the
idea of mental appearances ripening out of foundation consciousness, they do agree that
mind helps create objects, through the process of conceptualization. Give the short name
for this process (Tibetan track in Tibetan), and explain it.

5) There are many places in the sutras where the Buddha stated that the whole universe and everyone in it is "mind only." The Mind-Only School took this to mean that there are no outer, physical objects at all. Explain what two things the Buddha actually had in mind when He said that everything was "mind only."

a)

b)

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Six

1) Maitreya, in his wo	rk entitled <i>Th</i>	e Higher Line,	describes six	x different s	steps in the
process through which	the tendency t	o grasp to son	ne self-nature	causes karm	na, and thus
the world of suffering	life. Describe	these six. (Ti	betan track i	n Tibetan.)	

a)

b)

c)

d)

e)

f)

2) Describe how the Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explain what is happening in this case, using their concept of three parts, three material causes, and three contributing factors.

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Seven
1) Describe the difference between black, white, and black-and-white deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
2) Name and describe the four parts to a path of action, for the act of killing for example, as explained by Je Tsongkapa, who follows Master Asanga.
a)
b)
c)
d)
3) The second of these four part has three parts of its own. Name and describe these for the act of killing.
a)
b)
c)

A	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Eight
1) What does "most basic virtue" or "root of virtue" refer to? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for this phrase, and for what it refers to.)
2) Describe the kind of person who can lose this most basic virtue. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "loss of basic virtue.")
3) Describe two actions which can cause a loss of basic virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
4) Name two methods given in the Abhidharma for restoring most basic virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Nine
1) Name the five "immediate" misdeeds in their traditional order. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
2) Why are these deeds called "immediate"? Describe also the specific type of birth that one must take because of them. (Tibetan track answer both parts in Tibetan.)
3) Describe the profile of a person who creates the kind of schism called "breaking the wheel," and the people who participate.
4) What makes a misdeed "immediate"?
5) Explain the order of severity for the five immediate misdeeds.

*	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute

f)

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Ten
1) Name and describe the four types of giving outlined in the <i>Treasure House of Knowledge</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) Name four qualities of the person to whom you perform your exceptional giving, giving examples for each.
a)
b)
c)
d)
3) The Abhidharma describes the difference between a deed which is committed and a deed which is collected. List the six conditions that cause a deed to be collected as well as committed. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)

4	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute

Course V How Karma Works

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Final Examination
1) Name the main root text for the study of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma); give the author's name and his dates. Then give the name of the main commentary we will be using, the author and his dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
2) Explain the literal meaning of the words in the title of the root text.
3) What things does the word "abhidharma" actually refer to? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
4) Name the four required attributes of a reputable Buddhist book, and explain what they are in this case. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan and explain in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)

5) Name the two most basic types of karma, or deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
6) "Non-communicating" form has five characteristics. Describe them, by using the exact phrases from Master Vasubandhu's root text, and explaining each of them. (Tibetan track give each phrase in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
7) Give the definitions of virtue, non-virtue, and neutral karma. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)

8) Give the Tibetan words for shame and consideration, and explain the difference between them. (Tibetan track give words in Tibetan and explain in English.)
a)
b)
9) Give the abbreviated list of the ten rights and wrongs, and group them by the three gateways. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)

10) Name the (karma).	three types of experiences (in three different times) that ripen from deeds
a)	
b)	
c)	
11) (1) (1	
	ee bad deeds, one representing each of the gateways, and explain the four it will produce.
a) in bo	ody:
	i)
	ii)
	iii)
	iv)
b) in s _l	peech:
	i)
	ii)
	iii)
	iv)

Course V, Final Examination, Cont.
c) in mind:
i)
ii)
iii)
iv)
12) According to the Mind-Only School, what are you really looking at when you think you are looking at the sense faculty of your eye, and outside physical forms as well? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)
13) Explain how mental seeds from karma are planted, and then where they stay, and how they go on until they produce their consequences, according to the Mind-Only School. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "mental seed.") a)
b)

c)

Course V, I that Examination, Cont.
14) There are many places in the sutras where the Buddha stated that the whole univers and everyone in it is "mind only." The Mind-Only School took this to mean that ther are no outer, physical objects at all. Explain what two things the Buddha actually had in mind when He said that everything was "mind only."
a)
b)
15) Maitreya, in his work entitled <i>The Higher Line</i> , describes six different steps in the process through which the tendency to grasp to some self-nature causes karma, and thut the world of suffering life. Describe these six. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

16) Describe how the Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explain what is happening in this case, using their concept of three parts, three material causes, and three contributing factors.

17) Name and describe the four parts to a path of action, for the act of killing for example, as explained by Je Tsongkapa, who follows Master Asanga.
a)
b)
c)
d)
18) The second of these four part has three parts of its own. Name and describe these for the act of killing.
a)
b)
c)
19) What does "most basic virtue" or "root of virtue" refer to? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for this phrase, and for what it refers to.)

20) Describe the kind of person who can lose this most basic virtue. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "loss of basic virtue.")
21) Describe two actions which can cause a loss of basic virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
b)
22) Why are the five "immediate deeds" called "immediate"? Describe also the specific type of birth that one must take because of them. (Tibetan track answer both parts in Tibetan.)
23) Explain the order of severity for the five immediate misdeeds.

24) Name four qualities of the person to whom you perform your exceptional giving, giving examples for each.
a)
b)
c)
d)

Please PRINT your name clearly, exactly as you would like it to appear on your certificate, and the address to which the certificate should be sent.
Please circle one or specify other: Mr. Ms. Mrs. Miss Venerable
Name as you would like it to appear on the certificate:
Mailing name, if different:
Address
City State Zip code
Country

These notes were taken by a student in class, and should be used for reference only. Please check them against the audiotapes for accuracy of content.

Class Ones Abbidharma Overvio

Class One: Abhidharma Overview

Abhidharma was one of the first forms of Buddhism to come to India. It is considered to be part of Hinayana, mainly of the **Vaibhashika** (Detailist) **school.** The main book for study of Abhidharma is *Abhidharmakosha* (Tib.: **Chu Ngunpa Dzu**) by Master Vasubandhu (Tib.: **Loppon Yiknyen**).

Sanskrit: Abhi Dharma Kosha
Tibetan: NGUNPA CHU DZU
English: up to /approaching existing thing* treasury

*The highest existing thing in the Hinayana system is nirvana, so this refers to approaching nirvana.

Abhidharma means "up to nirvana." It refers to what takes you up to nirvana, i.e. wisdom or understanding emptiness. So **Abhidharma means wisdom/emptiness.**

There were seven original great books of Abhidharma composed by the original followers of Buddha. Master Vasubandhu took all of those seven treasures and compiled them into the Abhidharmakosha.

The commentary we are using is **TARLAM SELJE**, *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*, by the first Dalai Lama, **Gyalwa Gendun Drup** (1391-1474).

Why study emptiness? By being in deep meditation, you can't do any non-virtue of speech or body (and perhaps mind, depending on how deep your meditation is). You can trick yourself into doing good deeds, but the only thing that will really cause you to only do good deeds is seeing emptiness (says Shantideva).

In this school, you are not in Abhidharma until you see emptiness directly. The accessories are your body, heaps (skandas), etc. and concentration, which allow you to experience emptiness.

Two types of Abhidharma - unstained knowledge:

1.) SHERAB

higher knowledge (synonym for wisdom)

Main Abhidharma - consists of the three unstained or higher paths (of the five paths): seeing, habituation, and no-more-learning.

2.) **JEDRANG**

things following behind; "hanging"

Accessories to knowledge - wisdom from life, learning, contemplation, meditation, books.

- a.) Nominal accessories: wisdom you were born with, books, hearing, contemplation, meditation.
- b.) Real accessories: concentration and the heaps using during concentration.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class One, continued

Eight chapters in the Abhidharmakosha (root text):

- 1.) Categories of Existence General concept and overview: The basic categories are stained or unstained. Stained means having to do with your bad thoughts, produced by them, producing them, or the bad deeds themselves. All existing things are either stained or unstained. Most of what we experience is stained.
- 2.) **The powers** The faculties of perception (the senses); how do all things occur, how are they caused. Mental functions. This chapter is an elaboration of chapter one, where the powers are mentioned.
- 3.) **The Suffering World** Description of all the realms: who is suffering and where they are suffering. Describes beings, time, space, planet formations, etc. This chapter elaborates on the suffering world mentioned in the first two chapters.
- 4.) **Karma** This describes where the suffering world comes from and proves that the world is from karma and not from a creator God.
- 5.) **Mental Afflictions** (bad thoughts) Describes how bad thoughts motivate karma.
- 6.) **Person and Path** Person refers to advanced practitioners and path refers to wisdom. How to escape suffering.
- 7.) **Wisdom** More detail of wisdom mentioned in chapter six. Describes many kinds and details of wisdom.
- 8.) **Balanced Meditation** Description of a Buddha's knowledge, balanced between agitated and dull mind; a bright, attentive mind.

Four Requirements of a Buddhist Book:

- 1.) **JUJA Subject matter** is meaningful (The subject matter of the Abhidharma is the wisdom that understands stained and unstained objects).
- 2.) **GUPA Purpose** (The purpose of the Abhidharma is to plant the seeds of wisdom.)
- 3.) **NYI-GU Ultimate goal** (The ultimate goal of Abhidharma is nirvana)
- 4.) **DRELWA Relationship between the prior three** (To attain nirvana requires wisdom, which is developed by studying that book).

If it doesn't have these four, it isn't a Buddhist book.

Course V: How Karma Works Class Two: Basic Kinds of Karma

Opening line of the fourth chapter of the Abhidharmakosha:

LE - LE JIKTEN NA-TSOK KYE

karmic deeds from basis to be destroyed various they come

(i.e., the world)

Karmic deeds cause the multitude of worlds. All the planets and beings come from karma.

The following three categories are what people believe cause the world:

Unchanging things:

1.) **GYU TAKPA** Original cause, unchanging cause; like matter forming

cause unchanging from the big bang.

2.) TSOWO

main, primal energy The force, the primal energy which made things.

Changing things:

3.) **WANGCHUK** A creator being.

Indra or Ishvara

main, principle, primal energy

In the opening of the fourth chapter of Abhidharmakosha, Vasubandhu asserts that the above three aren't the source of existance using the reasonings taught in our last (logic) class. He goes on to explain what is the source of existance:

DE - NI SEM - PA DANG DE - JE SEMPA YIKYI LE YIN-NO movement of the mind and what it does/motivates karma of the mind is

Karma is the movement of the mind (mental karma) and what follows (includes speech and deeds.)

The most basic division of karma is into two: motivating karma and motivated karma. Motivating karma is the thoughts you have. Motivated karma is what you speak or do after thinking about it.

The three kinds of karma: of body, speech, and mind (emotions are of mind and mental factors).

Two kinds of verbal and physical karma: (This idea is from the Detailist school only.)

Communicating the intention through the color, shape,

NAMPAR RIKJE form of the person. Ex. seeing someone with hands clasped and understanding they are praying. Shape

(color or form) which allows you to impute meaning.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Two, continued

communicating it isn't

NAMPAR RIKJE MAYINPA Non-communicating karma: when you do some very good or bad deed, you gain an invisible light-type aura which is from outside of you and permeating you.

Five qualities of non-communicating karma:

- 1.) Even when you aren't thinking about it, it's still there.
- 2.) Even when the mind is almost shut down (in very deep meditation) it's still there.
- 3.) It has an ethical component it's either virtuous or non-virtuous.
- 4.) It continues on in a stream; it follows you through time and place.
- 5.) It is composed of subtle physical matter, having all types of elements (air, water, fire, and earth) as its cause.

Your suffering is your world and you.

Each planet has its own hell realms, higher realms, etc. You must have a genuine, strong understanding of where the world came from. As long as even a small part of your mind believes the world came from a creator God, you won't act based upon knowledge of karma, and can't escape sufferings.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Three: Three Kinds of Karma, Four Kinds of Good Karma

Three kinds of karma:

DU RESHI LA NAMMIN YIDU ONGWA DEWA NGONGWA DANG
In the short term karmic result desirable, attractive happiness to experience and ripening

TENDU DUKNGYEL LE KYOPPA NYANGDE TOPJE GEWA ultimately suffering from to protect nirvana it brings you good deed, virtue

A good deed (or virtue) is something which in the short term brings you a pleasurable experience, and which ultimately protects you from suffering by bringing you to nirvana.

NAMMIN YIDU MI-ONGWA MIDEWA NYONGWA NI MI-GEWA karmic result undesirable unhappiness experience that bad deed

A bad deed (or non-virtue) is that which brings you a karmic result which is an undesirable, unpleasant experience.

YIDU ENG MI-ENG KYEPA DINYI LE SHENPAY LE LUNG MA TEN desirable result undesirable result gives you these two other types karma neutral karma

Karma which is other than those two which give you desirable or undesirable results is neutral karma.

Four kinds of good karmic deeds:

1.) **DUNDAM GEWA**ultimate good deed

Nirvana: Only nominally karma - it's not an action.

2.) NGOWO NYIKYI GEWA Good deed by its very nature (there are five nature very by good deed of them):

Five deeds good by their very nature:

<u>The three roots of virtue</u> (the three kinds of mental functions):

- 1.) **Non-desire** understanding the selflessness of things and so not desiring.
- 2.) Non-hatred understanding selflessness and so not hating.
- 3.) **Non-ignorance** wisdom.

Two thoughts of virtue always present when doing virtue:

- 4.) Avoid bad deeds for reasons relating to **yourself** (i.e. <u>shame</u>: **ngo-tsa**).
- 5.) Avoid bad deeds because **someone else** may find out (i.e. <u>consideration</u>: **trel-yu**).

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Three, continued

3.) **TSUNG-DEN** association

When you have a virtuous thought, all of the linked

mental functions are virtuous by association. Those

mental functions which are nominally neutral are colored

by that thought.

4.) KUN-LONG

Verbal and physical actions, stemming from motivation.

virtuous motivation

A metaphor for these four good deeds is that a healthy body is like nirvana.

The nature of spiritual education is to see the empty nature of things and then to have the back and forth perceptions of things being empty vs. self-existant. Over time, we see things' self-existent nature less and less.

The ten non-virtues: (the most common of the 84,000 bad deeds)

Involving body:

- 1.) Killing
- 2.) Stealing
- 3.) Sexual misconduct

Involving speech:

- 4.) Lying (giving the wrong impression)
- 5.) Divisive speech (alienating others from each other)
- 6.) Harsh words
- 7.) Meaningless talk

Involving thoughts:

- 8.) Coveting
- 9.) Ill-will
- 10.) Wrong views (This is the worst of all. If we believed in karma, we wouldn't do the other nine.)

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Four: Divisions of Karma and Karmic Results

There are many ways to divide karma and explain or classify it. A few are listed here: Karmic consequences (by when you experience the result):

1.) TONG - GYUR

GYI

which you are going to see which will karma

Karma whose results you will see in this life. This is the basis of how tantra works.

2.) KYENE NYONG-GYUR GYI LE

which will karma after born experienced

Karma you experience in the very next life after this one (not counting the bardo, which is a birth as well).

3.) LEN-DRANG SHEN-LA NYONG - GYUR **GYI** LE

other in experienced will be which will karma

Karma which you experience in any life after your next one.

Four kinds of karma which must ripen (the seeds will definitely ripen rather than remaining latent):

1.) SHUK DRAKPO

force fierce

Deed committed with strong emotion (Or even charged

thought: -"I know I'm right" and acting on it is strong

ignorance - a mental function, like emotion.)

2.) YONTEN GYI SHI

good personal basis

quality

Deed committed toward a very holy object (such as the three jewels). Because the object has so much potential to help others, the impact of actions toward it affects

many others, too.

3.) GYUN - CHAKSU

over and over again

Deed committed over and over again will produce a

result. It becomes stronger and stronger.

4.) PA MA SUPA

father mother killing

Killing your father or mother. Even if done with motivation to benefit them, it will produce negative

karma. This is among the worst things you can do.

Two things that will make karma ripen in this life:

1.) SHING GI KYEPAR

object distinctive Doing a deed toward a "distinctive" (powerful) object.

A powerful object is one that can benefit many beings, or beings who have just come out of various high states.

2.) SAMPAY KYEPAR

thought distinctive

Deed done with an extraordinary motivation or thought.

The object or thought must be powerful enough to cause the karma to ripen in this life. Tantra is based upon this.

7

Class Four, continued

<u>Three karmic results</u> (from Je Tsongkapa's *Lam Rim Chenmo*):

1.) **NAM-MIN** ripening

Ripening depends upon how strong your emotions (desire, anger, etc.) are when you do the deed, what's the motivation, and how bad was the deed. A big bad deed such as killing results in hells; medium killing results in craving spirits rebirth, lesser killing results in an animal rebirth. Lesser means by accident; greater means with premeditated hate.

2.) **GYU - TUN** corresponding

With **corresponding results**, there is a similarity between what you did and what you get back. There are two kinds:

a.) NYONG-WA, or **similar experience**. Here the resulting experience is similar to the experience that caused it. For example if you stole, you will never have enough. If you killed, you will have a short or sickly life.

b.) JE-PA, or **similar habit**. You will have a predisposition to do that thing again in a future life.

3.) **DAK-DRE**

There is an **environmental** correspondence. For example, if you killed, you will live in a dangerous place with wars, muggers, etc. From sexual misconduct, you live in a place of stink, feces, filth, etc.

Examples of powerful objects which will cause karmic results to ripen in this life:

- 1.) Someone who has just come out of cessation meditation for the first time. Anything you do toward them at that moment becomes very powerful.
- 2.) Someone who just came out of immeasurable love or no-mind meditation for the first time. They are very close to liberation.
- 3.) Someone who has just come out of seeing emptiness for the first time.
- 4.) Someone who just became an Arhant.

Course V: How Karma Works Class Five: How Karma is Carried

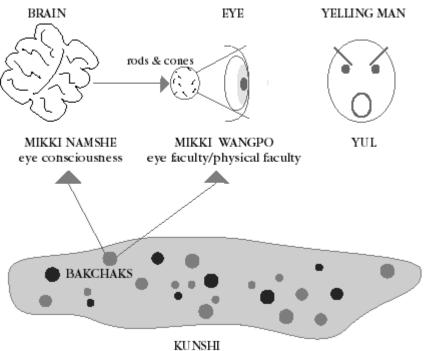
(This lecture is based on the **Madhyamika Prasangika (Implication)** school, from the text:

U-MA GONG-PA RAB-SEL middle way real intent total clarification

The Total Illumination of the Real Intent of the Middle Way, by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), which explains the **SEM TSAMPA**, or **mind only** presentation of how karma works, which is basically accepted by the Prasangika, and all other schools.

According to the Mind-Only school, this is how karma works:

You see an angry person yelling at you.



foundation consciousness / storehouse consciousness

Eye consciousness (**mikki namshe**) allows you to see a person yelling at you. The eye faculty (**mikki wangpo**), the physical entity consisting of rods, cones, lens, etc., takes in the image and transmits it to the eye consciousness in your brain.

You look at the person yelling, the eye faculty senses colors and shapes. Based upon that, a consciousness grows - you apprehend that the person is there with those colors, shapes, etc.

All your karmic seeds (**bakchak**s) are stored in your foundation or storehouse consciousness (**kunshi**). Then the seeds start to grow and create their result. It creates an

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Five, continued

eye consciousness (mikki namshe) - awareness of the yelling face. In fact, it's looking at itself. Mind-only school has the idea of kunshi to explain where karmic seeds are stored.

Mind-only school says that the **bakchak** produces a mental event (eye-consciousness) that looks like your eye faculty. You interpret it to be your eye. It's an emanation of kunshi, producing an image which you think is your eye faculty. The karmic seed causes an instance of kunshi which looks to you as an eye faculty, but is just a part of consciousness, looking at itself.

The kunshi is the place where the bakchaks stay, and it's what starts to look to you like your eye. It's all consciousness. There are no outer forms at all. Any time you see anything outside, it's just you seeing your own mind looking like that. The eye is a display of the mind's (kunshi's) bakchaks, and there isn't any eye at all. Consciousness is seeing consciousness; it's you seeing your mind. There is only mind - no outer forms.

(This example applies to eye consciousness and eye faculty. It also applies to all of the other senses in the same way - ear, taste, smell, touch.)

In the mind-only school, emptiness means that the same karmic seed ripening in your foundation consciousness creates or causes all these things: the mind that sees the angry person, the eye that senses the angry person, and the angry person himself. There is no separate seed or substance for the perceiver and the object perceived.

Collective karma means that everyone who gets together and does a deed (such as having classes) will all enjoy some event in the future together. Everyone in New York has the same karma to enjoy the same results. Someone who died or moved lost the karma to enjoy that result in New York.

The seer and what he sees is created by a karmic seed. The seer is your awareness/consciousness. What he sees is the eye (foundation), and by extension, the yelling man. You are seeing your mind yelling at you. Your experience of the whole universe is you experiencing your mind.

<u>That's how you get enlightened</u>. You plant all the right bakchaks in the kunshi and then you see yourself as an immortal deity in a paradise as a result. You must put the correct bakchaks in the kunshi to become enlightened. Just imagining yourself as a deity won't work to reprogram your consciousness because your actions aren't creating the right bakchaks in the kunshi. All bakchaks must be the kind to yield yourself as a deity; not just your thoughts, but speech and deeds as well. This is why morality is the basis of enlightenment.

Once the existing bakchaks ripen, it's too late to imagine things are pleasurable. Getting yelled at is no fun no matter how much you imagine it is pleasant. You can have a good

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Five, continued

attitude about an unpleasant object, which will plant the pleasurable future seed. It's too late to change the seed that's ripening.

How a karmic seed is planted

You yell at someone. As that deed comes to its conclusion, in the next instant, the remaining energy of the deed is transferred to the kunshi in the form of a bakchak. A bakchak is not mental and not physical. It's a kind of energy, or energetic potential, that stays in your mind. How does it stay around and remain preserved over time? It is a changing thing, each instant changing and continuing. The thing that affects the nature of how it changes and fluctuates as it streams on is your motivation, the object, confession, etc. as we listed earlier. If you yell at someone, it produces the result of you being yelled at later. Is it a person yelling at you later?

No, how could mind create a person? Mind creates mind. The awareness of yourself yelling creates an awareness of yourself being yelled at. Nasty content going in results in nasty content coming out. In Madhyamika Prasangika you perceive yourself doing a deed - say a virtue - and that perception plants a bakchak. That bakchak flowers into a result. That's why your motivation is the most important component of a karma (after a powerful object). Your perception of what you did (helped, hurt, etc.) mostly forms the bakchak, although there is another contributor to the bakchak's formation - the deed itself.

Madhyamika prasangika view:

The bakchaks reside in your stream of mind/being - in the unexamined "me" - what I call myself, the simple me, as I normally conceive of myself.

When the Buddha spoke of the world being "mind-only, created by your own mind", he meant (1) the worlds are created by karma and not a creator God. And (2) he wanted you to know that your mind is the main thing; the world is mainly coming from your own mind's ignorance.

TOK - PE TAK - TSAM The world is just what you label it. by your own conceptions just labelled

They say that there are parts out there that appear to you in a certain way. You perceive them and label them in a certain way as angry, happy, etc. When you look for the parts out there, you find parts of parts, ad infinitum, without end. That's a meditation on emptiness. If you continue to look for the most basic parts that you label "parts that are really there that I'm not labelling", you'll never find them. That's it's emptiness.

Course V: How Karma Works Class Six: Karma and Emptiness

How karma is caused through lack of understanding of emptiness:

Source: **GYU LAMA** (Sanskrit: *Uttaratantra*), which was dictated to Asanga by **JAMPA** (a.k.a. *Maitreya*). This book describes six causal steps to creating karma:

- 1.) It starts with a **bakchak** from a **previous life**, where through ignorance, you saw a thing that appeared to be **self-existent**.
- 2.) Two kinds of **ignorance spring up in your mind** as a result:
 - a.) Tendency to grasp to a **person's self-existent nature** (me, in general).
 - b.) Tendency to grasp to a **self-nature of dharmas**, or things (i.e. my bodily parts: my nose, my ears, my foot, etc.)

These are the two kinds of ignorance that exist in the world and cause all suffering.

- 3.) You look at pleasant and unpleasant objects and perceive them in a totally incorrect way (as self-existent). You think they're just happening on their own, but it's your own projections on a blank screen.
- 4.) Based upon the above misunderstanding of the inherent pleasure or pain of the object, we have attachment or aversion for the object.
- 5.) You collect karma based upon thinking of the object with attachment or aversion, or acting out of attachment or aversion.
- 6.) You circle around in the cycle of suffering life. It perpetuates itself.

Water Analysis: (CHU - BAB)

Take a glass of water. A Buddha, a human, and a craving spirit see it as nectar, water, and pus respectively. Are each of them having a valid perception (*pramana*)? Yes, but you can't have contradictory *pramanas*, so what's going on? It's empty, so each being's perception is a valid *pramana*.

There is a material cause present, the stuff which turned into water (in this case water is the original stuff). There are contributing factors present, in this case each being's karma, which leads them to see it as they do. There are three parts to the liquid (pus, water, and nectar) when the three beings are there looking at it. If only one being is there looking at the water, the material cause and contributing factors make it only one thing. It must be this way since one object (the liquid) can't be three different things at the same time (pus, nectar, and water). The three beings are each seeing a different part of the liquid simultaneously.

So however many types of beings are looking at the water, their contributing factors (karma) make the water have that many parts. If only a human is present, there will only be water in the cup. If a human and a Buddha are present, then there will be part nectar and part water in the cup, because two different karmas impact the cup of liquid.

Bakjaks increase and expand because we fertilize and nourish them with supporting thoughts and actions. When we stop fertilizing them, they won't ripen.

Self-existence means that things exist independent of my conceiving them that way.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Seven: Karmic Path, Black and White Karma

The **Desire Realm** consists of hells, ghosts (aka craving spirits) animals, humans, demigods, and pleasure beings. Pleasure beings exist in form and formless realms, also. Beings of the two higher realms (form and formless) don't and can't commit bad deeds, mainly because they are in deep meditation. They don't perform new good deeds at this level, and they have bad deeds from before, so when the good karma from their previous good deeds is used up, they take rebirth in the lower realms.

Black and white karma:

NAKPOY LE Called **black karma** because its essence is black and its result is black.

black karma Essence means it has to do with mental afflictions - it's causing

suffering or it is suffering. The result is black because the result is suffering. Black karma is collected in the desire realm, and is non-

virtuous.

KARPOY LE White karma refers to virtuous karma of the form realm - not desire

white karma realm. The result is white - pleasure. The essence is white because the

person doing the karma isn't suffering outright (no suffering body, but

must still age and die.)

KAR NAK DREPA Refers to virtue in the desire realm. The result is white-pleasure.

white black mixed The essence is black - mind and body are suffering as we do the

karma. We can only do mixed black and white karma (or black

only) in the desire realm.

Black and white karma refer to both the result of the deed and the nature of the being doing the deed. It doesn't refer to good and bad deeds.

SAK-ME KYI LE Karma which doesn't have a white or black result, but which

functions to remove the black karma. Ex. direct perception of

selflessness: a pure virtue without a karmic ripening.

Two ways to remove desire for this life:

1.) JIKTEN PAY LAM

unstained karma

world path The worldly path

In the worldly path, you get into deep states of meditation and move up from the desire realm through each level of the form realm and formless realm. Your mind moves through the four levels of each realm. Your mind and meditation become progressively more subtle. Based upon whatever realm you meditate on the most, you will take rebirth there. (Meditation becomes the causal form realm and rebirth is the resultant form realm.)

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Seven, continued

When your mind reaches the first level of the form realm, you have no desire for sense objects because all senses are withdrawn in this realm. If you get used to pleasure of the first level of the form realm, all earthly pleasures pale. While on the first level of the form realm, you get a taste of the pleasures on the second level, and move up to that higher pleasure, so the first is no longer appealing. You keep doing that - pursuing higher pleasures and giving up lower pleasures. This isn't a permanent giving up of desires. When you stop meditating, the mind comes back down to where you started. The pleasure doesn't stay, and it doesn't lead to liberation.

It's easy to mistake the higher pleasures for liberation, but they're not. Only one state of mind can remove your bad thoughts and lead to liberation - understanding your selflessness.

2.) JIKTEN LE DEPAY LAM

world beyond path

The path which is beyond the world.

This path transcends the world. You don't give up the desire realm or the form realm because you're moving up into higher levels of meditation; you give it up because you understand its selflessness - its emptiness. You remove your desire for an object because you understand its emptiness. When you reach the first level of the form realm in meditation, then you can see emptiness directly.

If you don't focus your attention on emptiness while there, then you will keep doing more pleasurable meditation on higher realms. Once you have sufficient concentrative ability, you must shift your focus to emptiness, alternating your meditation between analytical and single-pointed concentration. Only seeing emptiness can remove your desire for higher pleasure realms as a motivation to meditate and practice.

Prayer works because the virtue of asking for something beneficial creates the cause to receive it.

Karmic Path: LE LAM

karma path

There are four parts to a path of action, or karmic path (ex. killing):

1.) **SHI**

basis The object involved (ex. the person you killed)

2.) **SAMPA** The thinking involved, your intention or motivation (did you kill with premeditated anger or accidentally while trying to help someone).

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Seven, continued

Kinds of sampa:

- a.) **DU-SHE correct identification**. Is the person you kill the one intended?
- b.) **NYON-MONG bad thoughts**. Were you under the control of attraction, dislike, or ignorance when you committed the deed?
- c.) **KUN-LONG motivation or intention.** Did you want to kill or was it an accident?
- 3.) **JORWA undertaking the deed**. Taking the weapon and going after the person.
- 4.) **TARTUK completing the deed**. You collect the karma when the person actually dies.

LE LE KYI LAM

karma karma of path

A path of karma (or action) motivates the mind to shift to its object. For example, ill-will, craving, and wrong view are a path of karma. They motivate the mind to move, which is karma. The seven non-virtues of speech and body are karmas.

Karma is a movement of the mind. The mental functions which follow the mind, such as anger, love, etc., are not karma. (There is a big debate about this.)

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Eight: Cutting Roots of Virtue; Projecting Karma

Cutting your root of virtue:

GE-TSA CHU-PA

Destroying your root of virtue (collection of merit).

virtue root cutting

SUNAM GYI TSOK merit of collection

Collection of merit includes the first four perfections: giving, not getting angry, morality, and effort. It consists of all the

good deeds you have done.

YESHE GYI TSOK wisdom of collection

Collection of wisdom includes the fifth and sixth perfections

(wisdom and the concentration to be able to see emptiness).

You keep piling up good deeds (merit) and knowledge (wisdom). Your collection of merit causes a Form body (*rupakaya*), and your collection of wisdom causes a wisdom body (*dharmakaya*) of a Buddha. The wisdom body has two parts: the mind (or knowledge) and the emptiness of a Buddha. When you destroy your root of virtue, you wipe out and obliterate your collection of merit.

Two things that can cut your root of virtue:

(from Abhidharma):

LOK - TA diametric opposite view

Thinking the complete opposite of how something really exists. Looking at something that exists and

thinking it doesn't exist. For example thinking that karma doesn't exist. It must be a total rejection of the idea

to cut the root of virtue. Skepticism and doubt aren't

enough to be lok-ta.

(from Madhyamika):

KONG-TRO

anger

Anger directed at a bodhisattva. Each instant directed at him results in a kalpa in hell. The object is so powerful that identification, motivation, etc. are not important.

When you cut your root of virtue, Abhidharma says the virtues are wiped out and gone. Madhyamika says that it damages those good seeds so severely that they are inhibited from ever ripening and bringing a result. That's how purification works - it damages negative seeds so severely that they won't ripen.

Profile of who can collect a wrong view:

To have a wrong view, you must be able to hold a clear thought, or you can't think about it to reject it clearly. You must evaluate it thoroughly enough to be able to hold a sustain thought in a firm way. Only humans can do this. Of humans, only those who are intellectual are capable of thorough evaluation and holding a firm, sustained rejection in mind.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Eight, continued

<u>Ways to repair a wrong view</u>: (implies that you can restore previously damaged virtuous seeds to full potential)

1.) **TE-TSM** Having doubt that your previous wrong view is correct; doubting doubt your wrong view. You think, for example, maybe karma is correct.

2.) **NGE-PA** positively identify, with certainty

Having certainty that your wrong view is wrong and the to correct view is correct. (Having a correct perception about it.)

Divisions of karma:

PENJE KYI LE projecting to do karma

Projecting karma. It throws you to your next rebirth. The most powerful, strong karma throughout your life is the one likely to come up and project you to your next rebirth. It projects you to the bardo, and determines your bardo body and next rebirth. Because it's the most powerful karma in your life, it projects your next rebirth.

DZOK JE KYI LE complete to do karma

Completing or finishing karma. It decides the details of the next life. Projecting karma determines the overall type of life, and finishing karma determines all the many details of the life- rich, poor, accidents, etc.

Four permutations of projecting and finishing karma:

Example:

Good projecting/bad finishing: Human rebirth/always sick
 Bad projecting/ good finishing: Hell rebirth/Lord of Hell

3.) Good projecting/good finishing: Human rebirth/become enlightened

4.) Bad projecting/bad finishing: Hell rebirth/endless torment

It's very unlikely to be able to realize emptiness at the moment of death - <u>almost</u> impossible. It's the most painful moment of this life. Much better to do it in this life.

Once you realize a certain level of the second path (preparation) in which you think about emptiness and have a strong intellectual understanding, it's no longer possible to cut your root of virtue. You can't doubt karma, emptiness, etc.

If you're engaged in activity with a group of people for the same common goal (war, for example) and someone else other than you - the soldier at the front line - kills, all the people involved possess a full karmic path of action just as much as the one who killed, even if you're just working in the office behind the lines of fighting. The same line of reasoning applies to virtue.

Course V: How Karma Works **Class Nine: Five Heinous Deeds**

TSAM MENGA Five heinous bad deeds: (These cause you to go to hell in the next life - no other choice) interim none five

1.) MA SUPA mother kill

Killing your mother

2.) PA SUPA father kill

Killing your father

3.) **DRACHOMPA SUPA** Killing an arhant enemy destroyer (arhant) kill

sangha divide to do

4.) **GENDUN GYI YEN JEPA** Creating a schism; diving the sangha. If you do this one, you must go to the lowest hell. (Sangha here means those in robes following Shakyamuni Buddha; you can't commit this one now.)

5.) DESHEK LA NGEN SEM GYI TRAK JINPA Buddha from evil intention with blood to draw

To try to kill a Buddha with evil intention.

Two things that make these five actions so bad:

1.) PENPAY SHI help basis

Mother and father have helped you significantly by giving you a life as a human capable of enlightenment. That's why it's so bad to kill them. It's like you (1) reject your own Buddhahood (you are seeing your karma projected onto blank parents and want to kill it), and (2) want to eliminate it. Their raising you isn't mentioned in sutras as significant; their giving you a body is what is important.

2.) YUNTEN GYI SHI extraordinary of object qualities

The Buddha, Sangha, and Arhants are extraordinary objects. You also reject them (the concept of a unified Sangha, or the Arhant or Buddha) and want to eliminate them. The mental rejection of what these things stand for is what gives the deed its power in these cases. The unity of the sangha is the Dharmakaya, or an expression of the Dharmakaya.

Order of severity (starting with the worst) of these five deeds:

- 1.) Causing a schism attacking the Dharma body. Results in one eon in the lowest hell.
- 2.) Trying to kill a Buddha attacking the Form body.
- 3.) Killing an Arhant.
- 4.) Killing your mother.
- 5.) Killing your father.

CLASS NOTES
Course V: How Karma Works
Class Nine, continued

<u>Profile of one who can create a schism</u>: Must be a fully-ordained monk, charismatic, with good morality, very intelligent. The monk lies intentionally to the sangha, teaching five inaccurate rules to get to nirvana twelve years after the Buddha begins teaching, and not at Buddha's death. The two main disciples must be present, and one repairs the schism within 24 hours.

Mental bad deeds are worse than verbal or physical bad deeds.

<u>Par-kalpa</u>: The first people on the planet live 80,000 years. They have wonderful lives, similar to the garden of Eden. They start to do non-virtue, and life spans decrease, eventually reaching only ten year life spans. The end result of this non-virtue is near destruction of the planet. Then they meet and decide to live virtuous lives, and the life span increases back up to 80,000 years. That's one **par-kalpa**. There are sixty of those cycles in a **great eon**. A great eon contains the formation of the world, which takes a kalpa. A kalpa takes trillions of years. (Kalpa and great eon are the same thing?) Great eon contains the destruction of the world. Par-kalpas follow the same pattern in all worlds.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Ten: How to Make Karma More Powerful

JINPA Four kinds of giving:

giving

1.) **DAK KI DUN CHIR** me of for benefit

Giving for your own benefit. Giving to inanimate objects, temple, etc. No recipient benefits. It is of benefit only to get results in the desire realm (samsara). Two types of people do this: those who aren't free from desire for the desire realm or those in deep meditation free of the desire realm.

2.) SHEN DUN CHIR other for benefit

Giving for the benefit of others. No benefit to the giver; doing it only to help others and not themselves. Aryas do this, when those who have seen selflessness give to ordinary people. Don't wish for a result in the desire realm.

- 3.) **NYI KAY DUN CHIR Benefit both self and other by giving.** Giver wants result of both for benefit desire realm and recipient receives desire realm giving.
- 4.) **NYIKAY MIN CHIR Neither benefit by giving.** A Buddha giving to another both no benefit Buddha to honor them.

How to understand the most powerful giving; giving to bring the best karmic results:

Seven qualities of the giver that make the karmic result more powerful:

PAKPAY NOR DUN Seven riches of the Aryas. The best way to be when Arya (who has riches seven giving, to increase the power of the deed. Having these qualities when giving vastly increases the karmic power.

- 1.) **DEPA**faith

 Concentrate on good qualities and want to become like that yourself.

 Understanding the good qualities of holy beings, or goodness in general, and understanding those good qualities, admiring them, feeling joy and happiness about them being there, and wishing to be like them.
- 2.) **TSUL-TRIM** Avoiding the ten bad deeds. If you have morality when giving, the morality karma of giving is more powerful.
- 3.) **TONG WA** Don't be stingy be generous. Don't give from the leftovers, give from the main pool of resources.
- 4.) **TU-PA**learning
 Classroom hours of learning, so that you know and understand what
 you are doing. If you give without awareness of what you're doing, it
 has little benefit. You must understand the mechanics of what's going
 on with the giving the selflessness of the giver, the giving, and the gift,
 as well as how karma works, etc.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Ten, continued

5.) **NGOTSA SHEPA** be embarrassed to know lose face

Don't do bad deeds for reasons relating to yourself. No one would know if you did a bad deed, but you don't do it for your own conscience's sake. If you have this quality in your personality when giving, it makes the karma more powerful.

- 6.) **TREL YUP** Don't do bad deeds for reasons relating to what others will think
- 7,) **SHERAB** Understanding selflessness. wisdom

<u>Qualities of the giving that make the deed most powerful karmically</u>: The act of giving - the way in which you give - can increase the karmic power of giving. Three factors:

- 1.) Do it **out of respect** and have an attitude of respect in body language, presentation, manner, etc.
- 2.) Give **what is really needed** at the time it's needed most.
- 3.) What you give **can't cause harm** or be used for harm to the recipient.

The object of giving, to have the most powerful karmic result:

- 1.) **DROWA**type of being worst human, the worst criminal, than the best animal, because humans have the potential to reach nirvana in this life and animals don't.
- 2.) **DUK NGEL** Giving to someone who is **suffering** is much more powerful than suffering giving to someone who is not in great need.
- 3.) **PENPA**assistance Giving to a special object, such as someone like your **parents who**have helped you. This is because they have given you a human body which can reach enlightenment.
- 4.) **YONTEN** Giving to those of **high spiritual qualities**, such as those coming out of high meditation for the first time. This is giving to honor the person. What is given is of no value to the person, but honors them. Holy beings don't need the flowers, money, food, etc.

JE LA SAKPO Karma is committed and collected. It can also be committed and collected and not collected, according to Abhidharma.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Ten, continued

<u>Six things that cause karma to be committed and collected</u>: (Collected means that a **bakchak** is planted in your mental stream.)

- 1.) **Intentional -** You mean to do it.
- 2.) **Complete path of karma** All four parts are present: object, intention, undertaken, and completed.
- 3.) **No regrets** You are glad you did it.
- 3.) **No antidote** You didn't do anything to make up for it. The most powerful antidote is to think of karma and the emptiness of the deed.
- 5.) Glad you did it.
- 6.) **Definite karmic result** the result of the previous five. A karmic seed is definitely planted.

You can't do everything - you have limited time and resources, so you want to make the most of what you do, to get the biggest result for your effort. The qualities of the giver (doer), the giving (deed), and the recipient makes the action most powerful. You can manipulate your karmic outcome by doing the deeds to bring the best karmic result. (The example here is for giving, but it also applies to the other perfections.) By having these qualities when you do a deed, the karma is massively more powerful.

Course V: How Karma Works

Class Eleven: Course Review: Karmic Purification

TOP SHI - The four forces, used for karmic purification: (If all four parts are not complete, the purification does not work.)

1.) **TEN GYI TOP** foundation force

Foundation force. The foundation is the one you offended - living beings or Buddhas. The deepest meaning is taking refuge - the mental state of refuge - ultimately understanding karma and emptiness. When you fall down, you stand up by reasserting your refuge. Your refuge is in your knowledge of karma and emptiness, not some blind belief. It's understanding what's happening.

2.) NAMPA R SUNJINPAY TOP destruction force

Destruction force. To rip out the roots of something (with power). This is <u>regret</u>, not guilt. It is an intelligent, educated understanding that you just screwed up, based upon knowledge of karma and emptiness and how bakchaks work and are reaped. You know that you will suffer from what you did and why, karmically. You know you just caused yourself future suffering and regret it. You feel ill/bad.

3. NYE PA LE LARNDOKPAY TOP restraint force

Restraint force. You don't do it again. Since we can't just stop cold for the rest of our lives, we need a plan. So we set a time limit to stop for awhile - not to do the deed for an hour, a day, a week, etc. and build up the time length to get used to the new habit of not doing the deed. For chronic habits, set a short time limit, say five minutes, and concentrate hard on not doing it. The mind can't concentrate tightly for longer periods to avoid the habit. If you break a vow of restraint, you are lying, and collect more bad karma, so keep the time realistic.

4.) NYENPO KUNTU CHUPAY TOP

Antidote. You do something to make up for it. There are six possibilities:

antidote

- 1.) Recite holy **names** (like thirty-five Buddhas)
- 2.) Recite holy **mantras** (must be from a holy source and recited with good morality.)
- 3.) Study or read **scriptures**.
- 4.) Meditate on **emptiness** most powerful because it conditions you to change for the next time. It's the only thing that will lead to permanent change.
- 5.) Make offerings to **holy objects**. The highest offering is to succeed in your practice to do what your lama taught.
- 6.) Use **holy images**.

Vajrasattva meditation is most powerful, because it incorporates this.

CLASS NOTES Course V: How Karma Works

Class Eleven, continued

Karmic seeds expand, grow, and continue because we fertilize and nourish them with similar thoughts and deeds. If we stop fertilizing them this way, then they won't ripen.

The karmic seeds you have are in a queue to ripen. The most powerful ones go to the front of the queue and are experienced first. They delay the other seeds from ripening until the powerful ones are done.

For every day you delay becoming a good person, you are affecting, influencing, and impacting others badly. Your problems are hurting other people and messing them up. The longer you delay becoming enlightened, the more you hurt others.

The result of purification is that the intention part of the karmic path is ripped out and dramatically lessens the ripening impact. Karma ripens into a lesser result.

It's very important after purification to believe that you're clean - you're pure. (That's why last rites are important.)



COURSE V How Karma Works

Answer Key, Class One

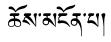
- 1) Name the main root text for the study of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma); give the author's name and his dates. Then give the name of the main commentary we will be using, the author and his dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha) of Master Vasubandhu, circa 350 AD.



b) The *Illumination of the Path to Freedom* of His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, 1391-1474.

2) Explain the literal meaning of the words in the title of the root text.

Abhidharma (chu ngunpa) means "knowledge." Abhi (ngunpa) means "up to" or "approaching." Dharma (chu) means an "existing object": anything which holds (dhr) its own nature. The highest of all existing objects is nirvana, and knowledge brings to you, or leads you to, this state.



chu ngunpa

- 3) List the eight chapters of the root text (Tibetan track in Tibetan), and explain their interrelation.
 - (1) Chapter One: The Presentation of the Categories of Existence

(2) Chapter Two: The Presentation of the Powers

(3) Chapter Three, The Presentation of the Perishable World

(4) Chapter Four, The Presentation of Karma

(5) Chapter Five, The Presentation of the Widespread Mental Afflictions

(6) Chapter Six, The Presentation of the Person and the Path

(7) Chapter Seven, The Presentation of Wisdom

(8) Chapter Eight, The Presentation of Balanced Meditation



Chapter One presents stained and unstained phenomena in a general way. The powers, and how caused things arise, are treated only briefly in Chapter One, and so Chapter Two gives more detail on these. The three realms of suffering existence are treated only briefly in the first two chapters, and so Chapter Three treats these in more detail. Some people think the source of these suffering worlds is a creator; Chapter Four disproves this idea and shows that the real source is our deeds. Chapter Five presents the motivating force behind these deeds: the mental afflictions. Chapter Six shows how we can eliminate these afflictions. Chapter Seven gives additional detail on the types of knowledge mentioned in the sixth chapter. Chapter Eight describes the qualities which Buddhas have in common with advanced beings at lower levels; these and the Buddha's unique qualities were mentioned only briefly in the seventh chapter.

4) What things does the word "abhidharma" actually refer to? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The word "abhidharma" means "knowledge." There are two types of this knowledge. Actual knowledge is the three unstained paths (the path of seeing, the path of habituation, and the path of no more learning). These constitute unstained wisdom and its accessories.

क्रिंग्सर्म् रविषारयार्त्रे सेराहेशवयरायस्या

chu ngun sherab drime jedrang che

- 5) Name the four required attributes of a reputable Buddhist book, and explain what they are in this case. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan and explain in English.)
 - a) Subject matter: Stained and unstained types of phenomena.

b) Purpose: To plant in students' minds the wisdom which analyzes phenomena in an ultimate way.

c) Ultimate goal: To have these students achieve the two types of nirvana.



sometimes also seen as:



d) Relation: The purpose is achieved through the subject matter of the book, and the ultimate goal through this same purpose. One can also state the relation as the subject matter (all existing objects) being related to what expresses the subject matter (the text itself).



drelwa



COURSE V How Karma Works

Answer Key, Class Two

1) The opening line of the fourth chapter of the *Abhidharmakosha (Treasure House of Knowledge)* explains where the universe and all the beings in it come from. Write the line out. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The opening line of the fourth chapter is: "Deeds cause the multitude of worlds."

le le jikten natsok kye

- 2) With this line, Master Vasubandhu is denying that the world can come from no cause at all, or from a cause inconsistent with its nature. Examples of the latter would be an unchanging cause, a primal energy, or a creator being. (Tibetan track name these three in Tibetan.) Give two reasons why the world cannot come from them.
 - a) If the universe and all the beings in it were creations of an omnipotent creator, then all the events in history should happen in one instant, and not in progressive stages where each stage is caused by the events of the ones before it.
 - b) If the universe and all its inhabitants came from an unchanging cause or a primal energy, then they would also be unchanging, and not come and go, as we can see they do.

The Tibetan for "unchanging cause" is *gyu takpa*; for "primal energy" is *tsowo*; for "creator being" is *wangchuk*.



3) Name the two most basic types of karma, or deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The two most basic types are:

a) movement of the mind, which is mental karma

b) what it motivates

sempe jepa

4) The two types of karma motivated by mind are deeds of body and of speech. Describe the two types that each of these has, giving an example of each. (Tibetan track give the two types in Tibetan.)

Bodily and verbal deeds can each be divided into "communicating" and "non-communicating" types. An example of communicating form is the look of a person who is performing prostrations, since this communicates to us that he is in a virtuous state of mind. An example of non-communicating form is the vows of a monk after he has already accepted them in a ceremony, since then we can no longer see anything physical or hear anything verbal that would tell us that these vows are present in his being.

nampar rikje ma-yinpa

- 5) "Non-communicating" form has five characteristics. Describe them, by using the exact phrases from Master Vasubandhu's root text, and explaining each of them. (Tibetan track give each phrase in Tibetan.)
 - a) Non-communicating form is possessed by a person even during times of "distraction": even when he is not thinking about it.

sem yengpa

b) This type of form is possessed even when the "mind is stopped": even when he or she is in that deep meditation where the mind at a very subtle stage (although not actually stopped).

sem mepa

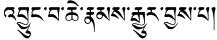
c) This type of form is either "virtue or not": its essence is either a good deed or a bad deed.

ge dang mi ge

d) This type of form "continues on" after a deed, related to the person who did it, in a constant stream.

jedrel

e) Finally, this type of form "takes the great elements as its causes," which is to say that it is physical matter.



jungwa che nam gyur jepa



COURSE V How Karma Works

Answer Key Class Three

- 1) Give the definitions of virtue, non-virtue, and neutral karma. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Virtue is an action which, in the short term, brings you a karmic result which is a pleasurable experience; and which ultimately protects you from suffering by bringing you to nirvana.

reshik nammin yi-ong dang ten du dukngel kyobpay le ni gewa

b) A non-virtue is an action which brings you a karmic result which is an undesirable, unpleasant experience.

nammin yi mi-ongway le ni mi-gewa

c) Neutral karma is an action which gives you a result other than the above two types of results.

yi-ong yi mi-ong le shenpay le ni lungmaten

- 2) Name the three root virtuous mental functions and describe them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Non-desire—understanding the selflessness of things and so not desiring them

duchak mepa

b) Non-hatred—understanding the selflessness of things and so not hating them

shedang mepa

c) Non-ignorance—having wisdom

timuk mepa

- 3) Give the Tibetan words for shame and consideration, and explain the difference between them. (Tibetan track give words in Tibetan and explain in English.)
 - a) Shame is avoiding bad deeds for reasons relating to yourself: you avoid a bad deed because of your own self-image—because you do not want to know, in your own heart, that you are being bad.



ngotsa

b) Consideration is avoiding bad deeds for reasons relating to others; that is, because you consider the effect or impression that your actions may impart to others.



9

4) Give the abbreviated list of the ten rights and wrongs, and group them by the three gateways. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Three done with your body:

(1) Killing

sok chu

(2) Stealing

(3) Sexual misconduct

Four done in your speech:

(4) Lying

dzun ma

(5) Divisive talk

trama

(6) Harsh words

tsik tsub

(7) Idle talk

tsik kyel

Three done in your thoughts:

(8) Craving

nabsem

(9) Ill will

nu-sum

(10) Wrong views

lokta



Answer Key, Class Four

- 1) Name the three types of experiences (in three different times) that ripen from deeds (karma).
 - a) Karma whose results you see in this life
 - b) Karma whose results you see in the very next life
 - c) Karma whose results you see in any life after the next life
- 2) What are the four types of deeds that, according to the Abhidharma, will definitely ripen into a future experience?
 - a) Deeds (either virtuous or non-virtuous) committed with a strong emotion
 - b) Deeds committed towards a very holy object, such as the Three Jewels
 - c) Deeds committed repeatedly
 - d) The deeds of killing your father or mother; this is due to the extraordinary level of assistance they have done to you by giving you a human body capable of reaching enlightenment
- 3) What are the two special features of a deed that can cause it to ripen in this same life?
 - a) Doing a deed toward a powerful object (such as parents or a Buddha, or the community of ordained people)
 - b) Doing a deed with a very powerful or extraordinary motivation

- 4) What four things can make the object of an action "special"?
 - a) The object of a deed is special due to being a higher form of life (that is, more likely to reach enlightenment if trained properly); for example, it's a higher virtue to give financial support to a human than to an animal, since the former has a real chance to reach enlightenment in this life.
 - b) The object of a deed is special due to being in a state of serious suffering; for example, helping a sick person, someone taking care of a sick person, or someone who is very cold.
 - c) The object of a deed is special due to having given you great assistance; for example, your father or your mother, who have given you a body and mind with which you can reach enlightenment in this life.
 - d) The object of a deed is special due to possessing high spiritual qualities, such as someone who has seen emptiness directly.
- 5) Name and explain the four different types of consequences that result from a karmic action.
 - a) "Ripened" result: A bad karma for example takes you to the hell realms, to the spirit realms, or to the animal realm.
 - b) "Corresponding experience" result: Even if you are born as a human, you tend to get hurt in the same way that you hurt others; for example, if you stole from others you tend to be stolen from.
 - c) "Corresponding habit" result: In your next life, you tend to enjoy the same sort of deeds; for example, if you killed others you enjoy harming things even from your childhood.
 - d) "Environmental" result: Your deed has an effect on the kind of world you are born into later; for example, sexual misconduct causes you later to live in a place which is foul-smelling.

6) Select three bad deeds, one representing each of the gateways, and explain the four consequences it will produce.

a) in body:

In body, answer can be for any one of the following three: killing; stealing; sexual misconduct

- i) "Ripened" result: For any of the above, a birth in one of the three lower realms.
- ii) "Corresponding experience" result: Even if you are eventually born as a human, then similar harm comes to you (respectively, you live a short life, and are continually unhealthy; you don't get the things you need to support yourself, or can never have your own things; and there are many people vying against you for your partner).
- iii) "Corresponding habit" result: You are attracted to doing the same wrong things again in your new life (killing, stealing, or committing sexual misconduct).
- iv) "Environmental" result: Even if you are born as a human, you live in a place which is dangerous or unhealthy (for killing); you live in a place where crops do not ripen properly, where there is famine and drought (for stealing); you live in a place which is filthy and smells bad (for sexual misconduct).

b) in speech:

In speech, answer can be for any one of the following four: lying; divisive talk; harsh words; idle talk

- i) "Ripened" result: For any of the above, a birth in one of the three lower realms.
- ii) "Corresponding experience" result: Even if you are eventually born as a human, then similar harm comes to you (respectively, people discredit what you say; you tend to lose your friends; you have to hear many unpleasant things around you; and no one pays any attention to what you say).
- iii) "Corresponding habit" result: You are attracted to saying the same wrong things again in your new life (lying; divisive talk; harsh words; or idle talk).

iv) "Environmental" result: Even if you are born as a human, you live in a place where your work never has any great result, and there are many dangerous and deceptive people around you (for lying); you live in a place where the environment is inhospitable and dangerous (for divisive talk); you live in a place which is covered with thorny bushes, sharp rocks, and generally rough, without sufficient water, and frightening (for harsh words); and you live in a place where none of the trees or plants give fruits which are ripe, or which ripen at the right time, and there are few parks or places to relax, and many frightening things around (for idle talk).

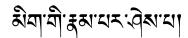
c) in mind:

- In mind, answer can be for any one of the following three: craving; ill will; wrong views
- i) "Ripened" result: For any of the above, a birth in one of the three lower realms.
- ii) "Corresponding experience" result: Even if you are eventually born as a human, then similar harm is done to you (respectively, you are overcome by feelings of desire, dislike, or ignorance).
- iii) "Corresponding habit" result: You are attracted to thinking the same wrong things again in your new life (craving; ill will; or wrong views).
- iv) "Environmental result": even if you are born as a human, you live in a place where things get worse by the day and month (for craving); you live in a place where there is much illness, and infectious diseases, and dangers, and war, dangerous insects and animals, evil spirits, and criminals (for ill will); and you live in a place where the holy Dharma has degenerated or been lost altogether, where people hold filthy things to be wonderful, and pain to be something pleasant.



Answer Key, Class Five

- 1) According to the Mind-Only school, when you see something, it is because two things arise together from one karmic seed that has been planted in the mind at an earlier time. Name these two things. (Tibetan track give them in Tibetan, and give the name for "Mind-Only School" as well.)
 - a) Consciousness of the eye



mik gi nampar shepa

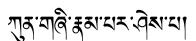
b) The physical faculty of the eye, which is actually foundation consciousness appearing as this faculty.



mik gi wangpo

2) According to the Mind-Only School, what are you really looking at when you think you are looking at the sense faculty of your eye, and outside physical forms as well? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

According to this school, you are really looking at the foundation consciousness appearing as the physical faculty of the eye and, by extension, as the outer forms that you think you are seeing.



kunshi nampar shepa

- 3) Explain how mental seeds from karma are planted, and then where they stay, and how they go on until they produce their consequences, according to the Mind-Only School. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "mental seed.")
 - a) Mental seeds are planted through your awareness of what you do, say, or think.

ববা:কবাঝা

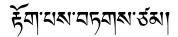
bakchak

- b) These mental seeds then stay in the foundation consciousness, even for a very long time, by replicating themselves from moment to moment, and passing their energy on from each older form of themselves to each newer form.
- c) When the conditions are right, the mental seed ripens into a perception of something.
- 4) The Middle-Way School doesn't accept the idea of a foundation consciousness (*kungzhi* in Tibetan, or *alaya vijnyana* in Sanskrit). Where then do they say the mental seeds planted by karma stay until they ripen?

The Middle-Way School says that the seeds simply stay with *you*: with the "you" that does exist, the "you" that you perceive when you look at your own parts, due to your karma.

5) Even though the Consequence group in the Middle-Way School doesn't accept the idea of mental appearances ripening out of foundation consciousness, they do agree that mind helps create objects, through the process of conceptualization. Give the short name for this process (Tibetan track in Tibetan), and explain it.

The short name for the process of conceptualization is *tokpe taktsam*. The mind looks at a collection of parts which can reasonably be perceived of as a "car" and then perceives it as a car, by organizing the parts into a perfect mental picture of a car. The mind then takes this picture to be "car."



tokpe taktsam

- 6) There are many places in the sutras where the Buddha stated that the whole universe and everyone in it is "mind only." The Mind-Only School took this to mean that there are no outer, physical objects at all. Explain what two things the Buddha actually had in mind when He said that everything was "mind only."
 - a) In a negative sense, the universe is said to be "mind only" in order to deny that it could be the product of anything else, such as some creator being.
 - b) In a positive sense, the universe is said to be "mind only" in order to assert that mind is its primary source, due to its role in the creation and ripening of karma.



Answer Key, Class Six

- 1) Maitreya, in his work entitled *The Higher Line*, describes six different steps in the process through which the tendency to grasp to some self-nature causes karma, and thus the world of suffering life. Describe these six. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) When you are born you already have karmic seeds (bakchaks) for the two tendencies to see things as self-existent (for seeing yourself and your parts as self-existent), planted there during past lives.

dakdzin nyi kyi bakchak

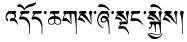
b) Due to the seeds, you start to have the two tendencies to see things as self-existent.

dakdzin nyi kye

c) You begin to see things the wrong way: some things appear to you to be attractive, and others appear to be undesirable, from their own sides.

yi-ong mi-ong tsulmin tok

d) Based on your misperception of things, you begin to feel ignorant like or dislike of these objects.



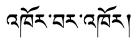
duchak shedang kye

e) Due to the emotions of liking and disliking, you do, say, or think negative things, which is collecting karma.

বেখ্য নথম্ম

le sak

f) This karma causes you to continue to circle around in the circle of suffering life.



korwar kor

2) When three different types of beings sit down together and look at a glass full of liquid, they see three different things. Does this mean then that nothing at all is one way or the other?

It does *not* mean that nothing is one way or the other. Things *are* one way or the other, because we perceive them as one way or the other, because our past karma is forcing us to see them that way.

3) Is it possible that the three beings have three perceptions which are all valid, and yet draw contradictory conclusions about a single object?

Yes it is; each being is having a perception which is valid given their own circumstances, and the three objects being seen are mutually contradictory from each other. We must be careful though in this case to say that the "one object" they are all three looking at is a *liquid*, and not "water," simply because water is what the human sees.

4) Describe how the Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explain what is happening in this case, using their concept of three parts, three material causes, and three contributing factors.

The three objects that the three beings perceive (pus, water, or nectar) can be described (initially) as three parts of the base object (the liquid). This liquid provides the "material cause"—the stuff or material that turns into each of these objects—in each case. The three different kinds of karma in the minds of the three different beings are forcing them to see the base object the way they do, and are the "contributing factor" in this case.

5) What happens to the three parts when, for example, a craving spirit tries to drink from the glass?

When the craving spirit attempts to drink from the glass, and the liquid becomes exclusively something that he alone is experiencing, then it goes from being part blood and pus (in a general sense) to being fully blood and pus (to him).

6) Are the pus and blood that the craving spirit sees in the cup actual pus and blood? Why or why not?

The pus and blood in the cup *are* actual pus and blood: the fact that they are just a perception forced upon the craving spirit does not in any way diminish their reality. The water too (the thing which the human sees) is now, and always has been, only a perception too.



Answer Key, Class Seven

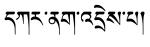
- 1) Describe the difference between black, white, and black-and-white deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Black karma has a black result, meaning suffering, as well as a black essence, meaning that it has to do with mental afflictions, and is itself suffering or the cause of suffering. This is non-virtue committed by someone in the desire realm.



b) White karma has a white result, meaning pleasure, as well as a white essence, meaning that the being doing the deed is not experiencing outright suffering with either their body or their mind). This is virtue committed by someone in the form realm.



c) Black-and-white karma has a white result of pleasure, and a black essence--which refers to the suffering body and mind of the being who does the deed. This describes good deeds committed by someone in the desire realm.



karnak drepa

- 2) Name and describe the four parts to a path of action, for the act of killing for example, as explained by Je Tsongkapa, who follows Master Asanga.
 - a) The basis, or object involved: Who it is you kill? Who is it you steal from, and what do you steal?

- b) The thinking involved: What thoughts were you having about the killing? (This part is explained further in the next question.)
- c) Undertaking the deed: Did you actually undertake the necessary actions to commit the killing?
- d) Completing the deed: Did you complete the deed (did the person actually die), and did you have a sense of ownership and satisfaction about it?
- 3) The second of these four part has three parts of its own. Name and describe these for the act of killing.
 - a) Correct identification: Did you recognize the thing for what it was? (For example, in the case of an abortion, did you really recognize that the fetus was a living being?)
 - b) Mental affliction (bad thought): Did you have a strong and active mental affliction like anger or lust when you committed the deed?
 - c) Motivation: Did you definitely wish to hurt the person; did you premeditate what you were going to do to them? Or was the action an accident?
- 4) Suppose someone is engaged in the support of a war by his country. He is not a soldier, but soldiers from his country kill some of the enemy. Does he himself collect the karma of killing, or not? (Use an actual verse quotation, Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Anyone who actively supports a war effort collects the karma of killing the enemy in exactly the same way as the soldier on the front line who pulls the trigger. As the text says, "They all get the same karma as the one who does the deed, since they are all engaged in a common goal, in the case of a war or the like."

> ।ব্যবা-অ-র্যবাধ-নম-র্ব্র-বার্ত্রবা-দ্রীম। ব্যব্যা-অ-র্যবাধ-নম্ব্র-বার্ত্রবা-দ্রীম।

mak lasokpar dun chik chir tamche jepapo shin den

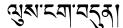
- 5) Give examples for the following (Tibetan track in Tibetan):
 - a) Something which is a karma but not a path of karma:

A simple movement of the mind.

sempa

b) Something which is both a karma and a path of karma:

Any of the seven non-virtues of body or speech. The mind has motivated the deed (karma), and a complete deed has been motivated (path of karma).



lu-ngak dun

c) Something which is a path of karma but not a karma:

The three non-virtues of mind (ill-will, coveting, wrong view): there has been no movement of the mind in the sense of a *deciding* to commit a mental non-virtue; but a complete deed *has* been committed.



yi kyi sum



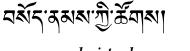
Course V How Karma Works

Answer Key, Class Eight

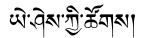
1) What does "most basic virtue" or "root of virtue" refer to? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for this phrase, and for what it refers to.)

The phrase "most basic virtue" or "virtue root" refers most broadly to the entire store of good karma that we possess. In the study of how this "basic" virtue or "base" of virtue is destroyed, the phrase refers specifically to what we call the "collection of merit," or the accumulation of good deeds which is going to produce our two physical bodies when we become an enlightened being. The "collection of wisdom" produces our mental state when we become a Buddha.





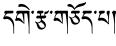
sunam kyi tsok



yeshe kyi tsok

2) Describe the kind of person who can lose this most basic virtue. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "loss of basic virtue.")

A loss of most basic virtue can occur with humans, male or female (as opposed to beings without a distinct sexual identity), who are intellectually inclined, since they are capable of sustained and powerful wrong views.



ge-tsa chupa

3) Describe two actions which can cause a loss of basic virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Two actions which can cause a loss of most basic virtue are as follows:

a) The development of wrong views wherein you hold, for example, that the laws of karma and the fact of enlightened beings do not exist.

lokte getsa chu

b) Intense anger focussed at a bodhisattva, or other very intense non-virtues.

kongtru getsa chu

4) Name two methods given in the Abhidharma for restoring most basic virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The two methods given in the Abhidharma for restoring most basic virtue are to suspect the truth of the principles of karmic cause and effect, or to gain correct view that they really do exist.

le yudam nyampay te-tsom

le yupar ngepay yangdakpay tawa

- 5) Give examples of the four permutations between projecting and finishing types of karma. (Tibetan track give the names for these two types of karma in Tibetan.)
 - a) A person whose life was projected by virtue but finished by nonvirtue would be someone like humans or pleasure beings who have sufferings in this life.
 - b) An example of a person whose life was projected by non-virtue but finished by virtue would be the Lord of Death in the hells, or naga kings.
 - c) An example of a person whose life was both projected and finished by virtue would be the lord of the pleasure beings, named "Destroyer of Thousands."
 - d) An example of a being whose life was both projected and finished by non-virtue would be those in the lowest of all hells, named "Without Respite."

दसेद निर्गी त्या

penje kyi le

र्ह्म्यायाचीराग्रीःयया

dzokje kyi le



Answer Key, Class Nine

- 1) Name the five "immediate" misdeeds in their traditional order. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Killing one's mother

ma supa

b) Killing one's father

pa supa

c) Killing a foe destroyer

drachom supa

d) Creating a schism in the community of monks

gendun gyi yen jepa

e) Drawing a Buddha's blood with evil intent

deshin shekpay ku la ngensem kyi trak jinpa

2) Why are these deeds called "immediate"? Describe also the specific type of birth that one must take because of them. (Tibetan track answer both parts in Tibetan.)

These five misdeeds are "immediate" because, as a result of performing them, on must take an "immediate" rebirth in the hells—which refers to the fact that no other kind of rebirth intervenes. Causing a schism in the community always leads to a birth in the lowest hell of "No Respite"; the others lead to this or to some other hell birth.

le jepay lu de dang nyelway bardu kyewa shen gyi tsam mepa

narme

3) Describe the profile of a person who creates the kind of schism called "breaking the wheel," and the people who participate.

The person who creates this kind of schism in the community is a full monk, with all his morality intact, and a sharp intellect. He manages to divide monks who have not yet perceived selflessness directly (called "children"), during a period when the Buddha is not directly present.

- 4) Name the six periods when such a schism is impossible. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Not at the "beginning of the wheel"—just after the Buddha has begun teaching.

chunkor korway tokma la

b) Not at "the end," as Lord Buddha enters His final nirvana

tar yongsu nya-ngen le depay tse

c) Not until there are faults in teachings, as far as the views of followers, and their morality

tenpa la tawa dang tsultrim kyi kyun majung bar

d) Not until the appearance of one of the "Great Pair"—Shariputra and Maudgalyayana—to reconcile the schism

chok sung chik gi ngarul du

e) Not after Lord Buddha has passed on

tuppa nya-ngen le depay oktu

f) Not until there are separate monastic residences

tsam che chung machepa dak tu

5) What makes a misdeed "immediate"?

Rejecting and/or eliminating objects which are very special, either due to the assistance they have granted one (a human body capable of achieving Enlightenment), or due to their exceptional spiritual qualities.

6) Explain the order of severity for the five immediate misdeeds.

The most severe is number four (creating a schism in the Community), due to the fact that it leads to a birth in the lowest hell, No Respite, for a full eon; and because it strikes a blow to the Dharma body of the Buddha, preventing realizations and creating havoc in the spiritual lives of people around the world for the length of the schism. Next is number five (drawing blood from a Buddha with evil intent), three (killing a foe destroyer), one (killing your mother), and two (killing your father).

7) Which deeds of the three passageways are most serious? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The three deeds of the thought.

8) Which of the five views is most serious? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Holding mistaken views.



lokta

Answer Key, Class Ten

- 1) Name and describe the four types of giving outlined in the *Treasure House of Knowledge*. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Giving which benefits oneself: When, for example, a person who has not yet freed himself from desire for the desire realm, or a common person who has done so but through the "path of the world," makes offerings to a shrine.

dak gi dun chir jinpa

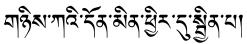
b) Giving which benefits the other: When, for example, a realized person, one who is free of desire, gives to another living being not so freed.

shen dun chir jinpa

c) Giving which benefits both: When, for example, a realized being who is not yet free of desire presents something to another living being who is not yet free of desire either.

nyikay dun chir jinpa

d) Giving which benefits neither: When, for example, a realized being who is free of desire for the desire realm makes offerings to a shrine.



nyikay dun min chirdu jinpa

2) List the seven qualities that make a person who performs giving an exceptional type of giver. What is the name of the seven together? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

These are the "Seven Riches of Realized Beings":

a) Faith

b) Morality

tsultrim

c) Generosity

tongwa

d) Learning

tupa

e) A sense of shame

ngo-tsa shepa

f) A conscience

trel yupa

g) Wisdom



sherab

- 3) Describe three qualities that make the actual action of giving exceptional.
 - a) Undertaking an act of giving with an attitude of respect, and in a physically respectful manner.
 - b) Giving what is really needed.
 - c) Giving in a way which does no harm to anyone else.
- 4) Name four qualities of the person to whom you perform your exceptional giving, giving examples for each.
 - a) By type of being: humans better than animals.
 - b) By kind of suffering: a person who's sick, or cold.
 - c) By the aid given to you in the past: your parents.
 - d) By their good qualities: a stream enterer.

- 5) The Abhidharma describes the difference between a deed which is committed and a deed which is collected. List the six conditions that cause a deed to be collected as well as committed. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The deed is done intentionally.

sam shindu

b) It is done with all the parts complete.

le kyi yenlak dzokpa

c) It is done without regret.

mi-gyupa

d) It is done without a counteraction.

пуепро тера

e) The deed comes with the necessary attendants.

kor dang chepa

f) The deed is of the type which is certain to ripen.

nammin nyong-nge



Tibetan Language Study Guide

Class One

番叭を表すなる。 chu ngunpa dzu

ลัสารนัสารฏิทาทุลิสา lopun yiknyen

अर्हेर्नेग्। बर 'यस'ग्रस्य प्राचित्। dzutik tarlam selje

> मुत्यः पः द्रयोः तर्द्रः सुपा gyelwa gendun drup

> > Ehu ngunpa

ทe dangpo kam tenpa

गद्रश्राम् प्रमा प्रमाणिक प्र

বার্ঝ'বার্ঝ্ঝ'বা

वहेवाद्देव चर्चेव या

ne sumpa

jikten tenpa

বাধ্যানপ্রনা

অব্যানমূর্যা

ne shipa

le tenpa

বাধ্ব্যাক্তী,বা

स्.क्रिश्राचर्ष्ट्रद्राया

ne ngapa

tragya tenpa

শ্ৰহ্ম হ্ৰ্ম খা

यार.चया.८८.जश.चर्चेत.ता

ne drukpa

kangsak dang lam tenpa

यादशःयर्द्दःया

ल.पुरानसूर-पा

ne dunpa

yeshe tenpa

বাৰ্থ্য'বক্সুব্'থা

र्क्रुमश्रायम् तह्नायायस्य

ne gyepa

nyompar jukpa tenpa

क्रिंग्सर्देर्वेशन्याद्वैरादेश्वर्या

chu ngun sherab drime jedrang che

٦**٤**٦:51

বর্গীশ্ব

বর্রথ:বা

juja

gupa

drelwa

> 35'5मेंश' nyigu

sometimes also seen as:

न्तेर:दर्शेश nyinggu

Class Two

অম্বর্থারে ইবাইন কুর্মার্থা ক্রীমা

le le jikten natsok kye

สู เร็ก เม่ ประวัง รากา เล็ก สูง tsowo wangchuk

মন্ত্রমার প্রত্তি প্রতি প্রত্তি প্রত্তি প্রত্তি প্রত্তি প্রত্তি প্রত্তি প্রত্তি প্রতি প্রত্তি প্রতি প্রতি

Sempe jepa

रूथायर देणानु र् nampar rikje

क्रायर रेजानुरामध्येत्रप्रा nampar rikje ma-yinpa

श्रेश्रश्चात्री श्रेश्रश्चात्री

sem yengpa sem mepa

न्यो:न्द्रः श्रे:न्यो हेशः द्रयेता

ge dang mi ge jedrel

jungwa che nam gyur jepa

Class Three

रे विया इस श्चेर प्येर वेंट र्टर याहत रुश्च्या यस्य श्चेंच पदे यस है र्वो या

reshik nammin yi-ong dang ten du dukngel kyobpay le ni gewa

इस्राङ्कीत्राधीन् सी विंद्रान्यवे त्यस्राज्ञी सी न्यो न्या

nammin yi mi-ongway le ni mi-gewa

ल्येर.सूर.लूर.भू.सूर.लाम.यावय.तयु.लाम.यु.लीर.मा.यक्षेत्र

yi-ong yi mi-ong le shenpay le ni lungmaten

वर्रेर्क्षम्बर्भेर्ध्या

duchak mepa

ले खूर से र या

shedang mepa

> ฦริ∙มุฦๅฌรฺนๅ timuk mepa

子面| 国へでです| ngotsa trelyu

র্মানার্ডন। মান্ত্রন্থের। মান্ত্রা sok chu majin len lokyem নম্ভ্রাপ্রা প্রমা র্মাস্ত্রা dzun ma trama tsik tsub tsik kyel নম্বান্ত্রা

nu-sum

lokta

Class Five

भैजा'जी'क्रा'धर 'वेरा'ध। mik gi nampar shepa

nabsem

มิฤ'จิ'รุจร:นั้ง mik gi wangpo

गुर-जाविः इसः धरः विशःध। kunshi nampar shepa

ববা.কবাপা

bakchak

ह्रेया'यश'यहग्रश'र्उभा

tokpe taktsam

Class Six

ন্ব্ৰা'ৰেছ্ৰ'নাষ্ট্ৰ'শ্ৰী'ন্ব্ৰা'ক্ৰনাৰা

dakdzin nyi kyi bakchak

यर्याःवह्रयःयक्षिशःश्रुका

dakdzin nyi kye

धीन विंद सी विंद सुवा सीन हेंग

yi-ong mi-ong tsulmin tok

उर्देर.कपाश.बु.र्बर.श्रुशा

duchak shedang kye

অম.বশ্বথাপা

वर्षिर पर वर्षिर।

le sak

korwar kor

Class Seven

न्याःसंदेः त्यस्य

nakpoy le

न्गर संदे त्या

<u> द्यार क्या वर्देश या</u>

karpoy le

karnak drepa

বিষয়'মে'শ্র্যাশ'ন্ন ইব্'মান্তুম। বিষয়'মেইন্ট্রিই'ম'র্ম্ম'ন্ত্রির'শ্রুম।

> mak lasokpar dun chik chir tamche jepapo shin den

প্রথম না

त्युरा-द्या-वर्द्र्या

থীব'শ্ৰী'নাশ্বুমা

sempa

lu-ngak dun

yi kyi sum

Class Eight

বনীস্থা

getsa

বর্মির্বরমশসূর্টেরামা

sunam kyi tsok

ল্য:প্ৰশ্ৰম:শ্ৰী:স্কুমাৰা

yeshe kyi tsok

नवीः सःविर्देनःया

ge-tsa chupa

व्यान्थ्रमः द्योः सः यार्वेद्

lokte getsa chu

বিদ্যান্থ্য বৃদ্যান্ত্র বিদ্যান্ত্র মান্ত্র বিদ্যান্ত্র মান্ত্র মান্ত মান্ত মান্ত মান্ত্র মান্ত্র মান্ত মান্ত

นพ.พุป. ปพ. ซึ่งพ. ปซ. ซู. ซู. ซุ. พ. ป le Angun unamban te-tsom

यमार्ज्य प्रमारे मारी प्याप्त प्रमान

le yupar ngepay yangdakpay tawa

वसेंद्र'तुंद'गुः'वारा penje kyi le

र्हेग्राज्ञेत्र्गीः यश् dzokje kyi le

Class Nine

ম'নার্মির'মা ধ'নার্মির'মা ma supa pa supa

> ব্যু'ঘর্ষঝ'ঘার্ঝব্'ঘা drachom supa

रमो'तर्ब मुं'र्जेन जेर्' gendun gyi yen jepa

रे.चबुर.चोवुचारानदुःश्ची.जा.टर.श्रुशराग्रीशायचा.उद्येर.ता

deshin shekpay ku la ngensem kyi trak jinpa

यशः मुद्देर्यदे त्युषादे दर्दर्मुया यदे यरः दुः क्रुं या म्विष्ठः मुक्ता अर्क्र अषा अद्राया

le jepay lu de dang nyelway bardu kyewa shen gyi tsam mepa

মন্ম মীন্

narme

क्र्यायप्र.यभूर.यदु.स्या.भ.जा

chunkor korway tokma la

भवर.लूटश.शे.शे.८४.जश.उटश.तपु.कू।

tar yongsu nya-ngen le depay tse

पञ्चत्रः पाः वाः प्राप्तः प्राप्तः विश्वाः मुन्तः स्वाः प्राप्तः स्वाः प्राप्तः स्वाः प्राप्तः स्वाः स्वाः स्व

ष्रकृत्यं विचित्रं वि

chok sung chik gi ngarul du

ब्रुय'य'शु'दद्ग'यद्ग'यद्ग'यदे र्वेग'हु।

tuppa nya-ngen le depay oktu

য়ড়য়য়ড়ড়ৼয়৻য়য়য়ঽ৻য়৻ঽয়৻ঀ

tsam che chung machepa dak tu

भैर्गी'यशम्बुम् yi kyi le sum

र्भेग् सृ

Class Ten

पर्याः में र्वेदः श्वेदः श्वेदः भी

ग्वित ग्री र्ने त श्री र श्री त श्री

मानेशामादे दें दें पुरें र ह्री दा पा nyikay dun chir jinpa

गानेशामादेश्वर क्षेत्र सुर पुर पुर्वेत पा nyikay dun min chirdu jinpa

वस्त्रारायदेः र्वेरः चर्त्र।

55'ম। র্ঝ'ব্রিমম। বার্দির'ন।

depa tsultrim tongwa

ชังเน่า รั.ช.ปิงเน่า tupa ngo-tsa shepa

ম্বিথার্ভার্টিথার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার্ভার্টিথার

รละ shindu

तम्भी अव त्यम ह्रेन्य प्र

र्ह्भे'दर्जेर्'द्रा mi-gyupa

पानेदःर्घे कीर्पा दिन्र्यः प्रकार nyenpo mepa kor dang chepa

> 表지:휣국:쥢도:로지 nammin nyong-nge



Please cut along the dotted line to make an insert for the binder spine

HOW KARMA WORKS

THIS COURSE USES A 1 1/2 INCH BINDER



HOW KARMA WORKS

Level 1 of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma)

